Operation Guide

Operation and Configuration

ISDN System Telephone

COMfortel® 1400

Table of Contents

Important Information 16
Symbols and Signal Words Used 17
Safety Information 18
Proper Use 20
Technical Data 22
Scope of Delivery 24
Possible Number of System Telephones on Auerswald PBXs 25
Copyright and Trademarks 26
Environmental Notice 27

Basic Knowledge of the Telephone 28
Device Overview 29
- Functions of Keys and LEDs 29
- Using the Touchscreen 31
- Casing LED 31

Menu Options 33
- Menu Option Examples 33
- Menu Overview 41
- Symbols 48

Basic Knowledge Configuration Software COMfortel Set 57
Configuration Software COMfortel Set 58
- Minimum Requirements for PC for Using COMfortel Set 58
- Starting COMfortel Set 58
- Exiting COMfortel Set 59
- Configuring the Language of the Configuration Software 59
- Configuring Interface Used 59
- Installing COMfortel Set 60
- Opening Configuration 60
- Creating a New Configuration 62
- Saving Configuration 62
- Close the Configuration 63
- Using Print Functions 63
- Operating Instructions for COMfortel Set 65

Help 67
Opening the Help Topic-Relevantly 67
Navigating in the Help Window 67
Searching in the Help 69
Printing from within the Help 70
Symbols in the Help Window 71

Telephoning 72

Incoming Calls 73
Options During an Incoming Call 73
Accepting Incoming Calls 74
Rejecting Incoming Calls 74
Hold incoming calls 75
Forwarding Incoming Calls 75

Call Waiting Calls 77
Options During a Call Waiting Call 77
Rejecting Call Waiting Calls 78
Accepting Call Waiting 78
Forwarding Call Waiting 78
Switching off Call Waiting Tone 79

Outgoing Calls 80
Options for Outgoing Calls 80
Picking up Receiver and Dialling Telephone Number 81
Dialling Telephone Number with Dial Preparation 81
Initiating External Calls with Number Presentation Suppression 81
Dialling Telephone Number on Direct Exchange Line Access 82
Options for Unsuccessful Calls 83
Initiating Callback on Busy 83
Initiating Callback on No Response 85
Initiating Priority Call for Do-not-disturb 86

Calls 87
Options during a Call 87
Retrieving Information about a Call 87
Sending DTMF Signals 88
Muting a Call 88
Ending a Call 88

Query Calls 90
Initiating a Query Call 90
Ending a Query Call 91
Options during a Query Call 91
Splitting 92
Ending One of the Two Calls 92
Connecting Both Communication Partners 93
Transfer 94
Options for Transferring a Call 94
Transfer with Announcement 95
Transfer without Announcement 95
Placing External Communication Partner in Waiting Loop 96
Calling a Third Subscriber and Transferring to an Active Communication Partner 96
Conference Calls 98
Initiating Conference Calls 98
Options during a Conference Call 98
Initiating Splitting during a Conference Call 99
Ending a Call with a Conference Call Partner 99
Connecting both Conference Call Partners 100
Ending Conference Call Completely 100
Hands-free Calling 101
Initiating Call in Hands-free Calling Mode 101
Ending up Call in Hands-free Calling Mode 101
Switching on Hands-free Calling During a Call 101
Switching off Hands-free Calling and Returning to Normal Calling 102
Loudspeaker Listening 103
Switching on Loudspeaker Listening during a Call 103
Switching off Loudspeaker Listening and Returning to Normal Calling 103
Ending a Call in Loudspeaker Listening Mode 103
Headset Calls 104
Initiating Headset Calls 104
Ending a Call in Headset Operation 104
Initiating Listen in Function on Receiver 104
Ending Listen in Function on Receiver 105

Telephone Book and Lists 106

Telephone Book 107
- Opening the Telephone Book 107
- Dialling from Telephone Book 110
- Configuring a Contact 110
- Editing a Contact 113
- Deleting a Contact 118
- Entering Comments for a Contact 119
- Configuring a Call Macro 120
- Accepting Telephone Numbers from Dial Preparation 121
- Accepting Telephone Numbers into Other Menus 122
- Configuring Displayed Telephone Number Range for Telephone Book 123
- Importing the Telephone Book 124
- Importing Outlook Contacts 125
- Exporting the Telephone Book 127

Redial List 128
- Opening the Redial List 128
- Dialling from Redial List 129
- Deleting Entries in Redial List 130
- Configuring Calls to be Recorded for Redial List 131

Calls List 132
- Opening the Calls List 132
- Dialling from Calls List 133
- Deleting Entries in Calls List 134
- Configuring and Operating Function Key for Calls List 134
- Configuring Calls to be Recorded for Calls List 136

Caller List 138
- Opening the Caller List 138
- Dialling from Caller List 140
- Deleting Entries in Caller List 140
- Configuring and Operating Function Key for Caller Lists 141
- Configuring Calls to be Recorded for Caller List 143
- Configuring the LED of the Message Key 144

Functions 146

Exchange Line Transfer 147
- Exchange Line Transfer Sequence 147
- Configuring and Operating Function Key for Exchange Line Transfer 147

Call Waiting 150
Switching Call Waiting On/Off 150
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Waiting 150
Switching Call Waiting Signalling On/Off via Tone 152
Do-not-disturb 154
Switching the Do-not-disturb Function On/Off 154
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Do-not-disturb 154
Configuring Type of Do-not-disturb 156
Automatic Call Acceptance 159
Switching Automatic Call Acceptance On/Off 159
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Automatic Call Acceptance 159
Attention Tone for Switching Automatic Call Acceptance On/Off 161
Configuring Call Acceptance Time for Automatic Call Acceptance 162
Boss/Secretary Function 164
Procedure when Calling the Boss Telephone 164
Switching Boss/Secretary Function on Boss Telephone On/Off 165
Configuring and Operating Secretary Key on Boss Telephone 165
Configuring and Operating Boss Key on Secretary Telephone 168
Switching Boss/Secretary Function for All Secretary Keys Off 170
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Switching Boss/Secretary Function Off 171
Follow me 173
Switching Follow me On/Off 173
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Follow me 174
Call Deblocker (Incoming) – VIP Numbers 176
Switching Call Deblocker (Incoming) On/Off 176
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Deblocker (Incoming) 176
Targeted Exchange Line Access 179
Targeted Exchange Line Access Variants 179
Initiating Targeted Exchange Line Access (A – Function Key **Exchange Line**) 180
Initiating Targeted Exchange Line Access (B – Function Key **Exchange Line**) 180
Initiating Targeted Exchange Line Access (C – Function Key **Exchange Line MSN**) 181
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Targeted Exchange Line Access (A – Function Key **Exchange Line**) 182
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Targeted Exchange Line Access (B – Function Key **Exchange Line**) 184
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Targeted Exchange Line Access (C – Function Key **Exchange Line MSN**) 186

Targeted VoIP Access Point 188
Initiating a Targeted VoIP Access Point 188
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Targeted VoIP Access Point 189
Group Functions 192
Detailed Information about Group Functions 192
Logging the Telephone In/Out 193
Logging Telephone Out of All Groups 194
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Group Function 194
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Logging Out of All Groups 198
Configuring and Operating the Display of the Group Status 200
Hotel Function 203
Function Areas of the Hotel Function 203
Configuring the Hotel Function 204
Check/Change Room Status on Hotel Reception Telephone 205
Performing Check-in on Hotel Reception Telephone 206
Configuring Wake-up Time for Room on Hotel Reception Telephone 207
Querying Call Charges for Room on Hotel Reception Telephone 207
Printing Interim Invoice for Room from Hotel Reception Telephon 208
Blocking External Telephoning for Room on Hotel Reception Telephone 209
Performing Check-out on Hotel Reception Telephone 210
Configuring Wake-up Time on Hotel Room Telephone 211
Querying Call Charges on Hotel Room Telephone 212
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Hotel Room on Hotel Reception Telephone 213
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Hotel Room on Hotel Room Telephone 215
InterCom Announcement/Handsfree 217
InterCom Announcement Procedure 217
Executing InterCom Announcement 217
Configuring and Operating Function Key for InterCom Announcement 218
InterCom Handsfree Procedure 221
Executing InterCom Handsfree 221
Configuring and Operating Function Key for InterCom Handsfree 222
Switching InterCom Permission On/Off 224
Configuring and Operating Function Key for InterCom Permission 224
Configuration Switchover 228
Configuration Switchover Executed Manually 228
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Configuration Switchover 228

Loudspeaker Audio Out ... 232
Executing Loudspeaker Audio Out ... 232
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Loudspeaker Audio Out ... 233
Macro ... 236
Macro Execution Procedure ... 236
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Macro ... 237
Configuring Display Presentation during Macro Execution ... 240
Memo ... 242
Creating a Memo ... 242
Retrieving a Memo ... 242
Pickup ... 244
Executing Pickup ... 244
Executing Pickup during Call ... 244
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Pickup ... 245
Power Dialling ... 248
Power Dialling Procedure ... 248
Executing Power Dialling ... 248
Cancelling Power Dialling ... 249
Switching Attention Tone for Power Dialling On/Off ... 249
Room Monitoring ... 251
Initiating Room Monitoring ... 251
Ending Room Monitoring ... 251
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Room Monitoring ... 252
Relays ... 254
Switching Relays On/Off ... 254
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Switching Relays On/Off ... 254
Call Forwarding ... 258
Call Forwarding Variations ... 258
Kinds of Call Forwarding ... 259
Switching Call Forwarding for Subscribers On/Off ... 260
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Forwarding for Subscribers ... 261
Switching Call Forwarding for External Numbers On/Off ... 268
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Forwarding for External Numbers ... 269
Call Restrictor (Incoming) – Robinson Numbers ... 279
Switching the Call Restrictor (Incoming) On/Off ... 279
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Restrictor (Incoming) ... 279

Power Save Mode 282
Switching Automatic Activation of Power Save Mode On/Off 282
Switching Power Save Mode Activation On/Off Depending on Configuration 283
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Manually Activating Power Save Mode 284
Switching the Power Save Mode Link to Phone Lock On/Off 286
Phone Lock 288
Enabling the Phone Lock 288
Disabling the Phone Lock 288
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Phone Lock 288
Scheduled Call 291
Opening Scheduled Call List 291
Configuring Scheduled Call as Schedule Reminder 292
Configuring Scheduled Call as Call Reminder 292
Accepting Scheduled Call as Schedule Reminder 294
Accepting Scheduled Call as Call Reminder 294
Editing Existing Scheduled Calls in Scheduled Call List 295
Deleting Existing Scheduled Calls from Scheduled Call List 295
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Scheduled Calls 296
Text before Answering 298
Variants for Text before Answering 298
Switching Text before Answering for Group On/Off 299
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Text before Answering for Group 299
Switching Text before Answering for External Telephone Number On/Off 302
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Text before Answering for External Telephone Number 302
Door Functions 305
Executing Door Functions 305
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Door Functions 307
Waiting Field Function 311
Configuring a Waiting Field 311
Sequence for Call Acceptance in Waiting Field 312
Switching Waiting Field Reception On/Off 314
Configuring and Operating Function Key and External Waiting Field 315
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Internal Waiting Field 318
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Switching Waiting Field Reception On/Off 320
Switching Attention Tone for Waiting Field On/Off 322

Speed Dialling 324
Application Options for Speed Dialling Keys 324
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Speed Dialling 325
Switching Automatic Speed Dialling Pick-up On/Off 328
Switching the Display of the Registration Status On/Off 329

Answering Machine local 330

Forwarding Incoming Calls to Answering Machine 331

Answering Machine Accepts Call – Call Acceptance 332

Readiness 333
Switching Readiness On/Off 333
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Readiness 334

Answering Machine List 337
Opening the Answering Machine List 337
Listening to recordings (messages and call recordings) 339
Dialling from the Answering Machine List 340
Configuring the LED Message Key 341
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Answering Machine List 341

List of Voice Memos 343
Recording Memos 343
Configuring and Operating Function Key Recording Voice Memos 343
Opening the List of Voice Memos 345
Listening to Recordings (Memos) 347
Configuring the LED Message Key 348

Announcements 349
Creating a New Announcement 349
Editing Existing Announcement in List 350
Deleting an Existing Announcement from List 351
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Editing Announcements 352

Call Acceptance and Announcement Assignment 355
Detailed Information about Call Acceptance and Announcement Assignment 355
Configuring Call Acceptance and Announcement Assignment 356

Basic Settings 359
Configuring Call Acceptance Time 359
Configuring Maximum Recording Time 360
Configuring Maximum Recording Time for Door Terminal Calls 361
Switching Listen in Function On/Off 362
Switching Automatic Playback On/Off 363
Switching Call Acceptance of Group Calls On/Off 364
Call Recording 366
Executing Call Recording 366
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Recording Initiation On/Off 367
Switching Automatic Call Recording On/Off 368
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Automatic Call Recording 370
Switching Info Tone for Call Recording On/Off 372
Remote Access 374
Remote Access Variants 374
Configuring Remote Access 375
Switching Remote Access On/Off 376
Switching Remote Access Toll Saver (and Quick Access) On/Off 377
Entering Quick Access Telephone Numbers 378
Executing Remote Access 379
Message Forwarding 382
Message Forwarding Sequence 382
Switching Message Forwarding On/Off 382
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Message Forwarding 383
Configuring Announcement for Message Forwarding 385
Configuring a Message Forwarding Target 386
Configuring Waiting Period for Message Forwarding 388
Configuring Message Forwarding Repetition 389
Data Exchange 391
Transferring Data from PC to SD Card 391
Transferring Data from SD Card to PC 392
Deleting Data from SD Card/PC 393
Selecting Another Telephone for Data Exchange 394
Saving Standard Announcements on Telephone 395

Voice Mailboxes of the PBX ... 397
Voice Mailbox ... 398
Opening the Message List of the Voice Mailbox ... 398
Listening to Recordings ... 400
Dialling from the Message List of the Voice Mailbox ... 401
Configuring and Operating the Function Key to Open the Voice Mailbox ... 402
Readiness ... 406
Switching Readiness On/Off ... 406
Configuring and Operating the Function Key for Readiness ... 406
Configuration-Dependent Control ... 410
Switching the Configuration-Dependent Control On/Off ... 410
Configuring and Operating the Function Key for Configuration-Dependent Control ... 410
Voice Memos ... 414
Configuring and Operating the Function Key for Recording Voice Memos ... 414
Distribution of Messages ... 416
Configuring and Operating the Function Key for Distributing Messages ... 416
Announcements ... 420
Create a New Announcement ... 420
Edit an Existing Announcement ... 421
Delete an Existing Announcement ... 422
Switching the Call Information On/Off for New Messages ... 423
Switching the Separator Tone On/Off for New Messages ... 423
Remote Access ... 425
Executing Remote Access ... 425
Switching Remote Access On/Off ... 426
Configuring and Operating the Function Key for Remote Access ... 427
Message Forwarding ... 431
Switching Message Forwarding On/Off ... 431
Configuring and Operating the Function Key for Message Forwarding ... 431
Substitute Function ... 435
Switching the Substitute Function On/Off ... 435
Configuring and Operating the Function Key for the Substitute Function ... 436

Settings ... 440
Identification ... 441
Configuring MSN ... 441

Protection from Unauthorised Access 443
Configuring User PIN 443
Configuring a Function Lock 444
Configuring Settings Lock 445
Display and Backlight 448
Configuring Language on Telephone 448
Configuring Display Backlight 448
Configuring Brightness 449
Switching the Inverse Display View On/Off 450
Configuring Time Format 451
Configuring Date Format 452
Calibrating the Touchscreen 453
Select Wallpaper 453
Casing LED 457
Configuring the Casing LED 457
Call Signalling 459
Switching Ring Signal On/Off 459
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Ring Signal 460
Switching Flashing Display Backlight for Call Signalling On/Off 462
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Signalling by Flashing Display Backlight .. 463
Ringtones 466
Determining Different Types of Calls 466
Configuring Ringtones 468
Changing Ringer Volume Automatically 469
Call Charges 471
Configuring Currency 471
Configuring Cost per Call Unit 471
Receiver and Headset 473
Adjusting Receiver Volume 473
Switching Headset Operation On/Off 473
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Headset Operation 474
Switching Headset Ringing On/Off 475
Adjusting Headset Volume 477

Menu and Function Keys ... 478
Restricting Menu Selection ... 478
Configuring Accessibility of Second Key Level ... 478
Configuring and Operating Function Key for Shift ... 479
Exchanging or Moving Function Keys ... 481

Service and Maintenance ... 482

Firmware Update ... 483
Firmware Update Variants ... 483
Initiating Manual Firmware Update ... 483
Initiating Instant Firmware Update via Update Server ... 485
Distributing Firmware ... 486
Saving Firmware as File on PC ... 486

Data Backup ... 488
Data Backup on PC ... 488
Data Backup to SD Card ... 491

Formatting SD Card ... 494

Selecting a PBX ... 495

Initiating PBX Synchronisation ... 496

Deleting Data ... 497
Restoring Factory Setting ... 497
Deleting Charges ... 497
Deleting Personal Data ... 498

Diagnostic Functions ... 499
Performing Line Check (BERT) ... 499
Determining the services on the PBX ... 500
Checking Quality of SD Card ... 500

License Information ... 502

Licenses ... 503

Index ... 528

Important Information

This section includes necessary information for operating your equipment safely. Before you put the telephone into operation, it is absolutely necessary for you to read the safety information described here and to make yourself familiar with the intended use of the device as well as the technical information.

Topics

– Symbols and Signal Words Used (page 17)
– Safety Information (page 18)
– Proper Use (page 20)
– Technical Data (page 22)
– Scope of Delivery (page 24)
– Possible Number of System Telephones on Auerswald PBXs (page 25)
– Copyright and Trademarks (page 26)
– Environmental Notice (page 27)

Symbols and Signal Words Used

The symbols and signal words used mean the following:

Warning:

Warns of personal injury, for example, caused by hazardous electrical voltage.

Caution:

Warns of damage to property.

Important:

Indicates possible application errors and conditions that, for example, could cause function limitations or malfunctions during operation.

Note:

Indicates supplementary information.

Safety Information

Please observe the basic safety information given in the following.

Warning: Improper handling of the device can result in life-threatening electrical shock and can damage or destroy the device.

- Read the instructions for the device and keep them for future reference.

Warning: Liquid entering the casing can cause life-threatening electric shocks and damage or destroy the telephone.

- Only operate the device in closed, dry rooms.
- Only clean the casing of the device with a slightly moist cloth or an anti-static cloth.

Warning: Touching defective connection lines can result in a life-threatening electric shock. In addition, any damage to the casing or to the device itself can be life-threatening.

- Only connect the device connection cable with sockets that are designed for that purpose.
- Have damaged connection lines replaced immediately.
- Use only original accessories and original replacements.
- Always have a professional carry out repairs immediately. Please contact your qualified electrician or the manufacturer directly.
- Do not touch the contact points with pointed, metallic or moist objects.
- Do not carry the device by the connection cables.
- Use the cable channels at the bottom of the telephone for strain relief.

Warnung: Power surges, which can occur during electrical storms, can cause life-threatening electric shocks and can damage or destroy the devices.

- Avoid disconnecting and connecting lines during an electrical storm.
- Let a qualified electrician lay all the cables inside the building.
- Protect the devices by installing overvoltage protection.

Warning: Headsets, external speakers, or receivers which are not admitted may cause hearing damage or interfere with the voice connection.

- Only use admitted accessories with the CE symbol in combination with this telephone.

Warning: The telephone receiver creates a weak magnetic field, which may attract small magnetic objects, such as needles and paper clips.

- Do not put down the receiver close to such objects in order to avoid injuries.

Caution: Inappropriate cleaning and operation can damage or destroy the touchscreen.

- Keep the touchscreen clean. To do this, use a soft, dry cloth.
- To operate the telephone, use your fingers or fingernails. Under no circumstance use ball-point pens, pencils, or other pointed objects on the touchscreen.
- Never apply force or excessive pressure when touching the touchscreen.

Proper Use

important:

Auerswald products are not designed, manufactured or intended for use or resale in environments requiring fail-safe performance, such as in the operation of life-support systems and/or nuclear facilities. Use or sale of our products for these purposes is only allowed with prior written permission by Auerswald for each individual incident.

Improper use may cause, e.g. functional restrictions or interference, the destruction of the device or, in a worst case scenario, personal injury.

- If you are still not sure of the intended use of the product after reading the following chapter, please contact your dealer.
- Read the instructions for the device and keep them for future reference.

The device COMfortel 1400 is a system telephone. The system telephone is intended exclusively for connecting to an internal S_0 or U_{P0} port of the following PBXs from Auerswald:

- COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP
- COMpact 2206 USB
- COMpact 4410 USB
- COMpact 5010 VoIP
- COMpact 5020 VoIP
- COMpact 5000/R
- COMmander 6000/R/RX

Important:

To support the COMfortel 1400 system telephones the PBXs require at least the following firmware version:

- COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP: 4.0L
- COMpact 2206 USB und COMpact 4410 USB: 2.4A
- COMpact 5010 VoIP und COMpact 5020 VoIP: 4.2E
- COMpact 5000/R: 6.2A
- COMmander 6000/R/RX: 6.0C

Connecting to a PBX from another manufacturer or to the external S_0 connection of a network provider is not intended.

The system telephone is corded and is intended for use in closed, dry rooms.

The system telephone is different from standard telephones connected to Auerswald PBXs in that they are especially easy to use, among other things. Most of the functions available on the PBXs such as internal and external calls, Do-not-Disturb and call forwarding can be operated over the display or by simply pressing previously programmed buttons. In addition, the system telephone supports offered functions for telephone switch boards (for example, the waiting field) and various telephone number lists (for example, the telephone book or call list).

The system telephone is equipped with a touchscreen. It can be configured either using the menu on the telephone display or using the configuration software COMfortel Set. The required PC is connected to a PC-port on the PBX.

The system telephone allows you to make calls by using both the connected receiver and the integrated loud speakers (hands-free calling). Another option is to connect a headset (not included in the package).

The system telephone supports the operation of corded headsets.

The answering machine function (not included in the package; fee-based activation at the Auerswald Upgrade Center) and a standard microSD/SDHC card (not included in the package) extends the COMfortel 1400 with an answering machine.

Note: Accessories and service parts can be bought at specialised dealers or in the Internet shop distriCOM (see **www.districom.de**). Delivery is provided only within Germany and Austria.

Technical Data

Technical Data of the telephone

Operating voltage	Supply via internal S_0 or U_{P0} port from the PBX
Power consumption	Min. 1,1 W, max. 2,0 W
System connection	Internal S_0 or U_{P0} port from one of the following PBXs: COMpact 3000, COMpact 2206 USB, COMpact 4410 USB, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R, COMmander 6000/R/RX
Memory	MicroSD/SDHC card, up to 8 GB recommended (not included in the package)
Displays	14 LEDs, partially polychromatic, 3,5 "-TFT colour display, 320 x 240 pixels, background lighting
User elements	Keypad, 13 permanently assigned function keys, colour display with touchscreen, directional pad, 10 programmable function keys
Handset	Electret microphone, dynamic receiver, hearing aid-compatible
Loudspeaker	8 Ohm, Ø 54 mm
Hook switch	Magnetic switch contact
Casing	Plastic material
Colours	Black
Dimensions (W x D x H)	223 mm x 148/158/168 mm x 185 mm
Weight	Approx. 980 g
Temperature range	0 to 40 °C
Safety	CE

Technical Data for Connecting a Headset

Current microphone consumption	Max. 0,5 mA
Microphone sensitivity	45 dB
Loudspeaker impedance	150 Ohm
Loudspeaker sensitivity at 1 kHz	19,5 W±3 dBPa/V
Sound pressure limit	24 dBPa

Headset jack pinout

6	Microphone +

5	Loudspeaker +
4	Loudspeaker -
3	Microphone -

Scope of Delivery

- Telephone COMfortel 1400
- Receiver with spiral cable (RJ10/RJ10) for connecting to the telephone
- ISDN cable (RJ-45/RJ 45) for connecting to the PBX
- Setup Guide
- Quick Guide
- Leaflet "Conditions of Guarantee, Information Service"

Possible Number of System Telephones on Auerswald PBXs

Important:

The power consumption of the terminals on the internal S_0 and U_{P0} ports on Auerswald PBXs may not exceed the listed values in the following table.

If using the PBXs COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX, the max. power distribution also includes the a/b ports. For each connected analogue subscriber, you must deduct 1 W from the max. power distribution.

PBX	Max. power distribution of the total of all internal S_0 and U_{P0} ports	Max. no. of telephones without wall-mounted power supply
COMpact 3000 analogue/ ISDN/VoIP	2,5 W	1
COMpact 2206 USB	4 W	2
COMpact 4410 USB	12 W (4 W per port)	6 (2 telephones per port)
COMpact 5010 VoIP	8 W (4 W per port)	4 (2 telephones per port)
COMpact 5020 VoIP	24 W (4 W per port)	12 (2 telephones per port)
COMpact 5000/R	24 W (4 W per port)	12 (2 telephones per port)
COMmander 6000/R	60 W (4 W per port)	30 (2 telephones per port)
COMmander 6000 RX	160 W (4 W per port)	80 (2 telephones per port)

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX (with Firmware 6.0A or later): During a call, the COMfortel 1400 allows you to accept another call and record it simultaneously on the local answering machine. When a second call is signalled as waiting, the PBX reserves the second call channel of the internal S_0 port for this function. At this particular time, a second telephone at the same port cannot initiate a call, accept an incoming call and pick up a call. Simultaneous call acceptance and recording by the local answering machine is not possible while another telephone is on a call at the same port. In order to ensure that the full scope of functions is available, you should connect only 1 telephone per port.

Copyright and Trademarks

Dissemination and reproduction of these instructions, as well as exploitation and disclosure of the contents, even in part, is permitted only with our express permission. Compensation will be demanded for any violations. All rights reserved. © Auerswald GmbH & Co. KG, 38162 Cremlingen, 2014

Microsoft and Windows are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation registered in the USA and/or other countries.

Bitstream Vera Font © 2003 Bitstream, Inc. All rights reserved. Bitstream Vera is a trademark of Bitstream, Inc.

Arev Font © 2006 Tavmjong Bah. All rights reserved.

All other trademarks mentioned are the property of the corresponding manufacturer.

This product contains software which is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Environmental Notice

Disposal

If you are retiring your Auerswald device, please ensure you dispose of it properly (it must not be disposed of in normal household waste).

In the interest of environmental protection, please ensure proper disposal of packaging materials as well.

Consult your local governmental authorities for options on proper and environmentally safe disposal of the device.

If you would like us to handle disposal, please send the device to us.

We only accept pre-paid shipments.

Energy Consumption

Your Auerswald telephone automatically uses only the absolutely necessary amount of power. Nevertheless, please observe the following recommendations for power saving:

- Use the power save mode as often as possible.
- Configure the brightness of the display only as high as absolutely necessary.

Further Environmental Information

Our environmental information can be found on the Internet (see **www.auerswald.de** under **Company > Environment**).

Basic Knowledge of the Telephone

This section provides a general overview how to operate the telephone. Here, you will find a description of the symbols and text shown on the unit display as well as the keys on the device In addition, you get an overview of the contents of the individual menus.

Topics

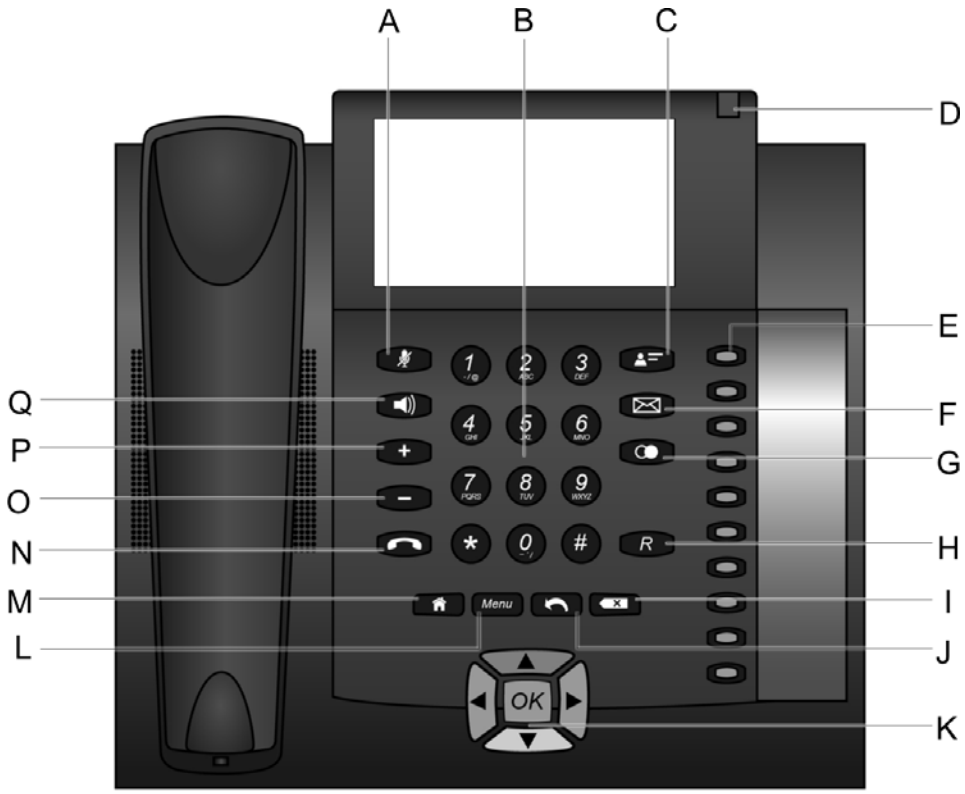
– Device Overview (page 29)
– Menu Options (page 33)

Device Overview

The device has a touchscreen display and a variety of keys (some with LED). Therefore, the device may be operated using touchscreen and key control.

Functions of Keys and LEDs

The following figure shows the keys and LEDs of the basic unit.



A Microphone key with LED
Switches the microphone off (mute) and on again.

B Keypad
Enables number dialling as well as entering digits and letters.

C Telephone book key
Opens the telephone book.

D Casing LED
The LED provides information about the telephone's operating mode and missed calls depending on the key definition.

E Function keys with LED

They are programmable.
The LED indicates the status depending on the key definition.

F Message key with LED
Opens the caller list, the answering machine list and the list of voice memos.
The LED signals existing (new) entries.

G Redial key
Opens the redial list.
Scrolls through the redial list.
When the receiver is off the hook, dials the previously dialled telephone number.

H Query key
Initiates a query call.

I Delete key
Deletes the last character before the cursor.
Holding the key (2 seconds) deletes the entire entry.

J Back key
Switches back in the previous menu or the previous level.

K Directional pad
Enables key-based navigation on the touchscreen.
The arrow keys are used to select the desired elements.
The OK key is then used to activate the desired element.

L Menu key
Opens the main menu.

M Home key
Closes the opened menu. Incorrectly exited settings are not saved.

N Hook key
Initiates/Ends headset calls or calls in hands-free calling mode.

O Minus key
Decreases the volume of the ringer, the receiver or loudspeaker depending on the operating mode.

P Plus key
Increases the volume of the ringer, the receiver or loudspeaker depending on the operating mode.

Q Loudspeaker key with LED
Switches loudspeaker listening on during a call.
Holding the key (2 seconds) switches hands-free calling on.

Using the Touchscreen

Caution: Inappropriate cleaning and operation can damage or destroy the touchscreen.

- Keep the touchscreen clean. To do this, use a soft, dry cloth.
- To operate the telephone, use your fingers or fingernails. Under no circumstance use ball-point pens, pencils, or other pointed objects on the touchscreen.
- Never apply force or excessive pressure when touching the touchscreen.

Important: Electrostatic discharge or moisture may cause the touchscreen to malfunction.

- Avoid contact with other electrical equipment.
- Clean the touch screen only with a soft, dry cloth.

Note: The touchscreen reacts most effectively to fingertip control.

The following is a list of actions available on the touchscreen:

Select, open, switch on/off

Tap the corresponding position on the touchscreen briefly with your fingertip (e. g. symbol, list entry).

Fast scrolling in lists

Tap the symbol or and **keep it pressed**.

Casing LED

The casing LED provides information about the telephone's operating mode and missed calls.

If you find the LED signalling disruptive or bothersome, it can be switched off. A variety of settings are possible:

LED Signalling during Configuration: Show Alerting, Calls and Entries in the Caller List

- **Red**: The telephone is on a call.
- **Red (blinking)**: New entries in the caller list are present.
- **Red (flashing) + alternating pauses)**: The telephone is being called.

- **Off**: The telephone is neither being called, nor is it on a call, and there are no new messages.

LED Signalling during Configuration: Show Alerting and Calls

- **Red**: The telephone is on a call.
- **Red (flashing) + alternating pauses)**: The telephone is being called.
- **Off**: The telephone is neither being called, nor is it on a call.

LED Signalling during Configuration: LED Always off

- **Off**: LED is switched off.

Notes:

In the telephone you can adjust the casing LED in the menu **settings > signalling > casing LED**.

In COMfortel Set you can adjust the casing LED in the menu **Settings/ functions > Signalling/ringer > Casing LED**.

Menu Options

The telephone has a 5-line graphic display; each line has 16 characters (when entering telephone numbers, the font size is changed to display more characters).

On both sides, there is room for up to four symbols with integrated functions. These symbols change their function depending on the situation and facilitate operation.

The appearance of the display depends on the state of the telephone.

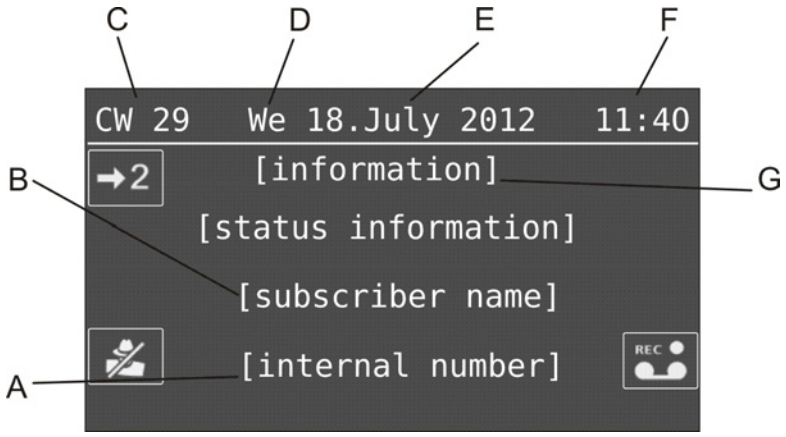
Only those functions are offered that are usable in the respective state. If not all of the information can be displayed due to lack of space, only the most important functions are displayed.

Menu Option Examples

The menu options are dependent on the state of the telephone. In conclusion, here are several examples of menu options.

Menu Options in the Idle State

The following information is shown on the display while the telephone is in the idle state:



A The internal telephone number of the subscriber in the PBX

B Name of the subscriber in the PBX

C Calendar week

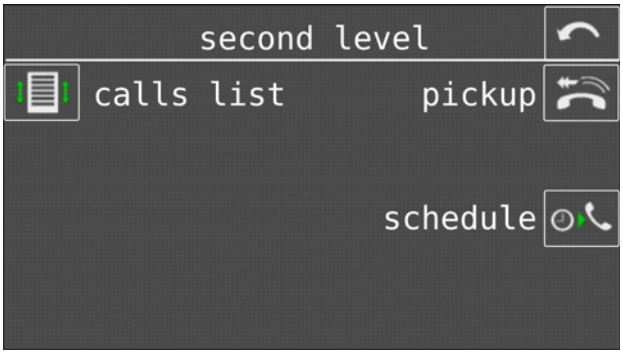
D Weekday

E Date

F Time

G Information and status information
– Current settings that affect telephoning, for example call allowance account empty
– Current settings that limit reachability, for example, do-not-disturb, call forwarding immediately, follow-me, ringer off
– No connection to the PBX
– Missed caller and scheduled calls
– Power dialling enabled

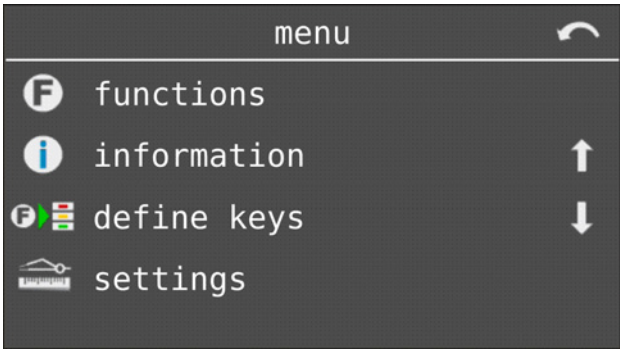
Tap on →2 to switch to the menu/function level 2.



Tap on the symbol/text to perform various functions.

Menu Options in Main Menu (after Pressing Menu Key)

Press the **menu key** to open the main menu with various menus.



Tap on ↓ and ↑ to scroll through the selection list.

Tap on the list entry (text or symbol) to go to the next menu.

- In the **functions** menu, you can activate/deactivate or execute functions in the PBX and the telephone (for example, do-not-disturb or the telephone lock).
- The **information** menu is only used to display information (for example, versions, accumulated charges and the status of certain important functions/settings). No changes can be made here.

- In the **define keys** menu, you can assign functions on the PBX and the telephone to programmable function keys (for example, do-not-disturb or speed dialling).
- In the **settings** menu, you can configure the telephone.
- In the **answer.machine** menu, you can configure and operate the local answering machine.
- In the **voice mailbox** menu, you can configure and operate a voice mailbox in the PBX.
- In the **diagnosis** menu, you can perfom diagnosic functions.

In the submenus, you can scroll through the selection lists using and just as you can in the main menu. Tap on the list entry (text or symbol) to again go to the next menu.

To go back to the preceding menu level, tap on . To go back into the idle state, press the **home key**. In addition, the telephone automatically switches back into the idle state if no keys are pressed within a period of 30 seconds.

Important:

Some functions are not offered until the function is available on the PBX and has been configured, and if necessary, an authority level has been granted for the use of this function.

The functions and settings available in the menus **functions**, **define keys**, **settings**, **answer.machine** and **voice mailbox** can be restricted by the administrator to prevent unauthorised use. The release and display of these disabled functions in to the selection list requires entering the corresponding PIN after selecting **additional**. The release remains intact during the settings that now follow. The release is revoked if no keys are pressed within a time period of 60 seconds. You can actively disable the release by selecting **log out** in the menu **settings > blocking > additional**.

Menu Options during Key Definition

Press the **menu key** and tap on **define keys** to open the associated menu.

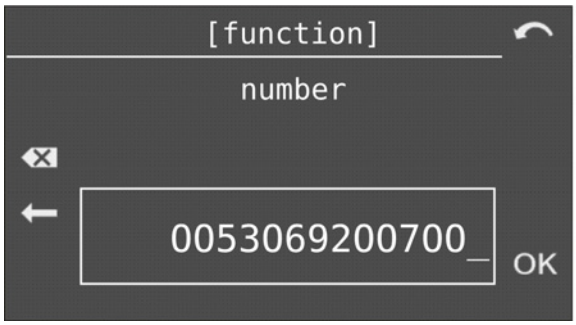
After this, you must first press the **function key** to be defined and then tap on the level to be defined.

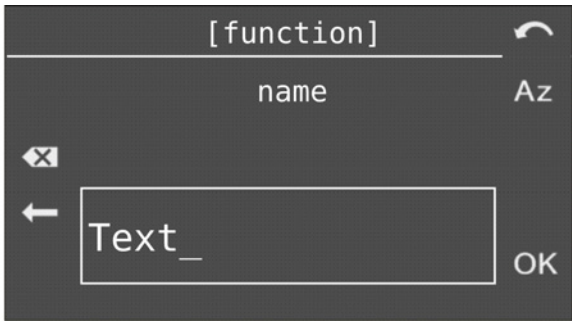
If the function key has not yet been defined with a function, you can select the desired function after selecting the level to be defined.

On the other hand, if the function key has already been defined with a function, the selection of the level is then followed by a selection menu for further procedures. Select **new** to select a new function for the key in question. Select **delete** to empty the key of any definitions. Keys that have been defined with functions are redefined by selecting **change** (for example, a new telephone number for call forwarding). If you have made a mistake and would like keep the original state, tap on .

Menu Options in Telephone Number and Text Entry Menus

To enter a telephone number or text, the telephone opens one of the following menus.





Using the **keypad dial**, you can enter the digits, characters and letters you need. In the text entry menu, press the **digit keys** want a more times until the desired character appears. The assignment is listed in the table at the end.

Tap on Az, AZ and az to switch between uppercase and lowercase letters. The symbol indicates the current settings.

Tap on ← and →, to move the cursor to the left and right.

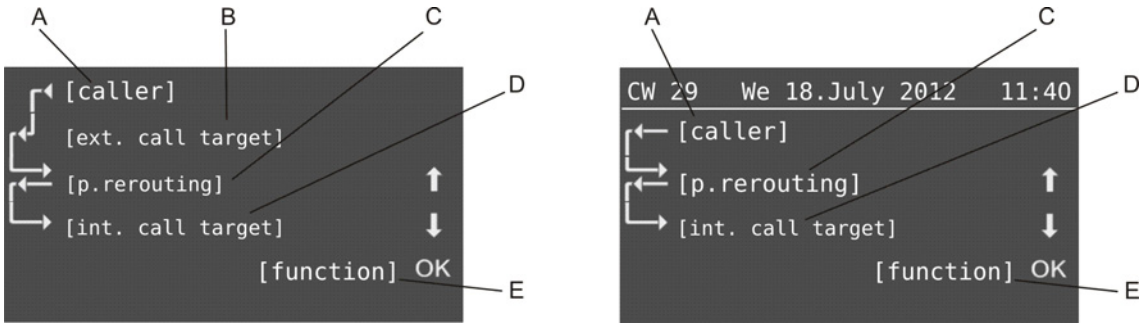
Tap on ⌫ to delete the last character before the cursor.

Tap on OK to accept the entry.

Key	Assignment for uppercase letters	Assignment for lowercase letters
1	1 - / @ +	1 - / @ +
2	A B C 2 Ä Æ Å Ç	a b c 2 ä æ å á à â ç
3	D E F 3 É	d e f 3 é è ê ë
4	G H I 4	g h i 4 ì í î ï
5	J K L 5	j k l 5
6	M N O 6 Ö Ø	m n o 6 ö ø ñ ó ò ô
7	P Q R S 7 ß	p q r s 7 ß
8	T U V 8 Ü	t u v 8 ü ú ù û ÿ
9	W X Y Z 9	w x y z 9
0	Space 0. , : ’ “ ? ¿ ! ¡ _	Space 0. , : ’ “ ? ¿ ! ¡ _
*	* ( ) [ ] < = > « » ^ ‘ ~ { }	* ( ) [ ] < = > « » ^ ‘ ~ { }
#	# % & § £ $ Euro symbol	# % & § £ $ Euro symbol

Menu Options During Incoming Calls

The following information is displayed during an incoming call:



A Caller, call waiting or call type (for special calls, for example, alarm calls, wake-up calls)

Note:

If the telephone number is entered in the telephone book of your system telephone or in the central telephone book (short-code numbers) on the PBX, as soon as the telephone detects the telephone number, it will show the associated name in the display instead of the telephone number. The prerequisite for displaying the telephone number is that the exchange line subscriber has not suppressed the display of his telephone number or that he has approved transmission of the telephone number.

If the telephone number is not available, "anonymous" is displayed.

If the name of the caller is not in the telephone book, a search for the name can be performed using the online name search function on a server in the Internet (see instructions for the PBX). If the telephone number is transmitted for an incoming call, the PBX automatically looks for the corresponding entry. When an entry is found, it is shown on the display of the system telephone.

If the call is a special call, one of the following pictures is displayed:

Alarm call.

Scheduled call.

Door call.

Wake-up call.

B External call target/exchange line number called (for external calls), doorbells (for door calls) or InterCom type (for InterCom calls)

C The person rerouting the call (for rerouted calls)

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

D Internal call target (subscriber or group)

E Possible Functions for Incoming Calls

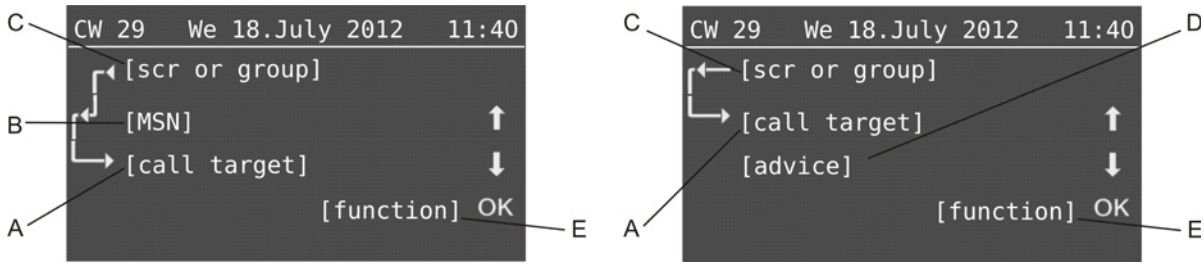
Your system telephone shows possible functions during an incoming call in the lower line of the display.

Tap on ⬇ and ⬆ to scroll through the various options.

Tap on OK to initiate the function currently displayed.

Menu Options during Outgoing Calls

The following information is displayed during an outgoing call:



A Call target

Note:

If the telephone number dialled has been assigned a name in the telephone book of the system telephone, this will be displayed as soon as the telephone detects the telephone number. The telephone number is simply overwritten by the name.

If less than nine digits have been entered, they are displayed in a larger font to facilitate legibility (during dialling/during the call). If the telephone number dialled has been assigned a name in the telephone book of the system telephone, and this name comprises fewer than nine characters, this name is also displayed in a larger font.

B Outbound MSN used for the call

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

C Subscriber or group (if "logged in as outgoing" in a group)

D Note (for example, busy, do-not-disturb, no exchange line authorisation)

E Possible Functions for Outgoing Calls

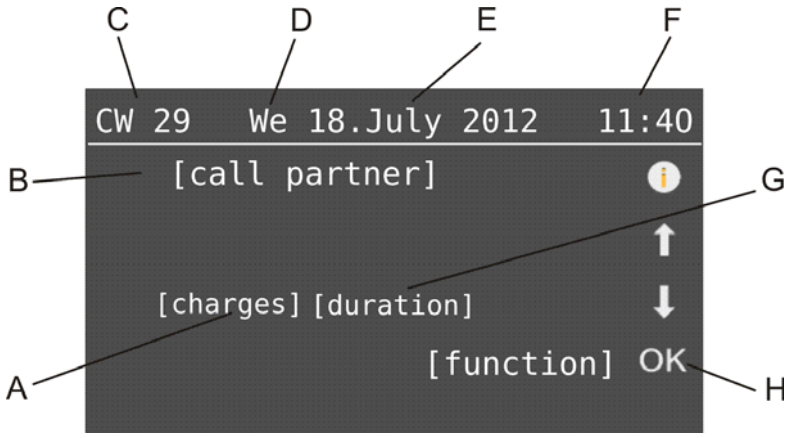
Your system telephone shows possible functions during an outgoing call in the lower line of the display.

Tap on ⬇ and ⬆ to scroll through the various options.

Tap on OK to initiate the function currently displayed.

Menu Options during Calls

The following information is displayed during a call:



A Costs (for outgoing external calls)

B Communication partner

Note:

If the telephone number has been assigned a name in the telephone book of the system telephone, this will be displayed.

C Calendar week

D Weekday

E Date

F Time

G Duration in minutes:seconds (as of 59:59, in hours:minutes)

H Possible Functions during a Call

Your system telephone shows possible functions during a call in the lower line on the display.

Tap on ↓ and ↑ to scroll through the various options.

Tap on OK to initiate the function currently displayed.

Tap on ⓘ to access additional information about the call.

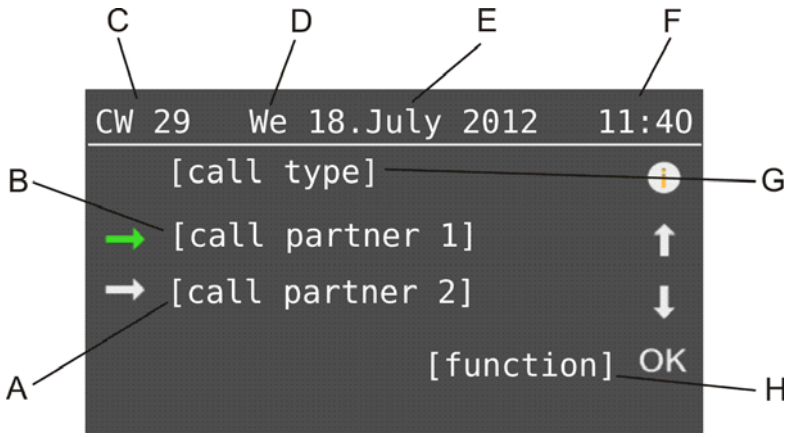
- Telephone number of the communication partner
- MSN dialled
- Exchange line used (for targeted exchange line access)
- Provider number and name

Tap on ↓ and ↑ to scroll through this information.

Tap on OK to go back to the previous view.

Menu Options during Query Calls

The following information is displayed during a query call:



A Communication partner 2

B Communication partner 1

Note:

If the telephone number has been assigned a name in the telephone book of the system telephone, this will be displayed.

C Calendar week

D Weekday

E Date

F Time

G Type of call (splitting or conference call)

H Possible Functions during Query Call

Tap on → during splitting to select the active communication partner. The other communication partner who had been active up until now is put on hold in the backgrounds listening to hold music.

Tapping on during a conference call only activates the communication partner in relation to carrying out the next function. The status of the call does not change at first.

Your system telephone shows possible functions during a query call in the lower line on the display.

Tap on ↓ and ↑ to scroll through the various options.

Tap on OK to initiate the function currently displayed.

Tap on to access additional information about the call.

- Telephone number of the communication partner
- MSN dialled
- Exchange line used (for targeted exchange line access)
- Provider number and name
- Duration in minutes:seconds (as of 59:59, in hours:minutes)
- Costs (for outgoing external calls)

Tap on ↓ and ↑ to scroll through this information.

Tap on OK to go back to the previous view.

Menu Overview

The main menu (after pressing the menu key) provides access to the menus listed at the end.

Information Menu

- version of telephone
- version of PBX
- boot loader

- boot device
- MSN/name
- configuration
- subscriber CF unconditional
- subscriber CF on busy
- subscriber CF on no reply
- call deblocker
- call restrictor
- ringer tone
- ringer volume
- call waiting
- do-not-disturb
- InterCom permission
- interface
- headset
- hardware audio codec
- call charge
- call allowance account
- serial number
- TAM aktiv
- TAM message fwd.
- TAM quick access numbers
- VMB used
- SD card
- Touch Calibration

Functions Menu

- automatic call acceptance
- call deblocker (incoming)
- call forwarding: subscriber
- call restrictor (incoming)
- call signal/light
- call waiting
- caller list
- calls list
- delete charges

- delete data
- do-not-disturb
- door functions
- follow-me
- group
- group functions off
- headset
- InterCom permission
- MSN/DDI CF (CF ext.no.)
- phone lock
- pickup
- relays
- ringer tone
- room monitoring
- scheduled call
- switch configuration
- waiting field reception

Define Keys Menu

- automatic call acceptance
- boss key
- call deblocker (incoming)
- call forwarding: subscriber
- call restrictor (incoming)
- call signal/light
- call waiting
- caller list
- calls list
- do-not-disturb
- door function
- exchange line
- exchange line transfer
- follow-me
- group
- group status
- headset

- hotel room
- InterCom
- InterCom permission
- log out all groups
- macro
- MSN/DDI CF (CF ext.no.)
- phone lock
- pickup
- power save mode
- ringer tone
- room monitoring
- relays
- scheduled call
- secretary key
- shift
- speed dialling
- switch configuration
- TAM automatic call recording
- TAM call recording
- TAM edit announcement
- TAM list
- TAM message fwd.
- TAM readiness
- TAM voice memo
- text before answering
- VMB config.ctr.
- VMB distr.mess
- VMB forwarding
- VMB open
- VMB readiness
- VMB rem.access
- VMB substitute
- VMB voice memo
- VoIP account
- waiting field
- waiting field reception

Settings Menu

- backup
  - configuration
  - CF1400 -> SD
  - SD -> CF1400
  - w/o MSN -> CF
  - automatic
- blocking
  - function lock
  - settings lock
- default settings
  - language
  - MSN
  - receiver volume
- display
  - brightness max.
  - brightness min.
  - calibration
  - date format
  - display backlight
  - inverse view
  - time format
  - wallpaper
- do-not-disturb
  - kind of do-not-disturb
- headset
  - automatic call acceptance
  - headset volume
  - headset ringer
- lists
  - caller list
  - calls list
  - phone book
  - redial list
- power save mode

  - automatic activation
  - configuration
  - idle time
  - phone lock
- signalling
  - attention tone
  - call waiting tone
  - message LED
  - registration status subscriber
  - ringtone
  - ringer volume
- synchronisation
  - distribute firmware
  - firmware update
  - select PBX
  - synchronisation with PBX
- user settings
  - keys 2nd level
  - macro display
  - menu definition
  - speed dialling key

Answer. Machine Menu

- functions
  - call acceptance
  - TAM automatic call recording
  - TAM message forwarding
  - TAM readiness
  - TAM voice memo
- settings
  - automatic playback
  - call acceptance time (rec.delay time)
  - call for groups
  - call recording tone
  - edit announcement

  - forwarding announcement
  - forwarding repetitions
  - forwarding repetition time
  - forwarding target
  - forwarding time
  - listen in
  - quick access
  - recording time
  - recording time door
  - remote access
  - remote access toll saver

Diagnosis Menu

- ISDN
  - line check (BERT)
  - supported service test
- SD card
  - test card

Voice Mailbox Menu

- functions
  - VMB config.ctr.
  - VMB forwarding
  - VMB open
  - VMB readiness
  - VMB rem.access
  - VMB substitute
- settings
  - call information
  - edit announcement
  - separator tone

Symbols

The symbols and the functions they execute are listed at the end according to the states and menus in which they can occur.

Symbols in the Idle State

Symbol	Function
	Switches from the idle state to menu/function level 2.
	Switches unsuccessful power dialling off early.
	Enables number presentation suppression (CLIR) for the next call(s). Active setting: Number is presented.
	Disables number presentation suppression (CLIR) for the next call(s). Active setting: Number is suppressed.
	Retrieves a memo (telephone number note).
	Switches an enabled telephone lock (PIN entry is required).
	Switches the answering machine on.
	Switches the answering machine off.

Symbols in Dial Preparation Menu

Symbol	Function
	Moves the cursor to the left.
	Moves the cursor to the right.
	Deletes the last character before the cursor. Holding the key (2 seconds) deletes the entire entry.
	Accepts the entry and dials.

Symbol	Function
	Switches back into the idle state.
	Creates a telephone book entry with the telephone number shown.
	Creates a scheduled call with the telephone number shown.

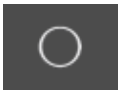
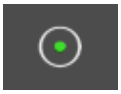
Menu symbols for Callers and Calls

Symbol	Function
	Selects the communication partner for splitting or other functions. The communication partner is currently inactive/waiting.
	Display only: The communication partner is currently active.
	Selects the communication partner for additional functions during a conference call. The communication partner is currently inactive.
	Display only: The communication partner is currently active.
	Selects the function shown in the lower line of the display.
	Scrolls to the next function in the lower line of the display.
	Scrolls to the previous function in the lower line of the display.
	Opens information about the current call.
	Display only: Loudspeaker listening is enabled.
	Display only: Hands-free calling is enabled.
	Display only: The microphone is switched off (mute).

Menu Navigation symbols

Symbol	Function
	Switches back in the previous menu or the previous level.
	Scrolls down to the next entry or to the next function. Holding the key allows quicker scrolling. Simultaneously tapping on lets you jump to the beginning of the list.
	Scrolls up to the previous entry or the previous function. Holding the key allows quicker scrolling.
	Opens a short overview in the telephone book and in the telephone number lists.

Symbols for Selection

Symbol	Function
	Selects and accepts the function indicated in clear text behind the symbol. The function is currently not enabled.
	Selects and accepts the function indicated in plain text behind the symbol. The function is currently enabled.
	Selects the currently empty check box.
	Clears the currently selected check box.
	Accepts the changes.

Symbols in Telephone Number and Text Entry Menus

Symbol	Function
	Moves the cursor to the left.
	Moves the cursor to the right.
	Deletes the last character before the cursor. Holding the key (2 seconds) deletes the entire entry.

Symbol	Function
OK	Accepts the entry.
Az	Switches the setting for upper and lower case spelling during letter entry. Active setting: If the next letter is upper case, then the letters are automatically displayed in lower case.
AZ	Switches the setting for upper and lower case spelling during letter entry. Active setting: All letters are upper case.
az	Switches the setting for upper and lower case spelling during letter entry. Active setting: All letters are lower case.

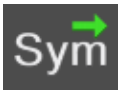
Symbols in Define Keys Menu

Symbol	Function
049...?	Initiates entry/change of the telephone number.
	Initiates entry/change of the name.
	Switches between various options.
MSM DDI	Initiates entry/change of the telephone number to be forwarded.
OK	Accepts the changes.

Confirmation Symbols

Symbol	Function
OK	Confirms the displayed question with "Yes". Or: Confirms the display of a change and switches into the idle state.
	Confirms the displayed question with "No".

Symbols in Telephone Book Menu

Symbol	Function
	Opens an expanded display of the contact shown.
	Initiates the creation of a new contact.
	Opens a short overview.
	Opens a current contact for editing/deleting.
	Initiates entry/change of the name.
	Initiates entry/change of the business telephone number.
	Initiates entry/change of the private telephone number.
	Initiates entry/change of the mobile telephone number.
	Initiates entry/change of the comment.
	Initiates entry/change of the call macro.
	Accepts the fax number (only contacts of the PBX) for subsequent dialling into the dial preparation.
	Accepts the user defined number (only contacts of the PBX) for subsequent dialling into the dial preparation.
	Accepts the telephone number for subsequent dialling into the dial preparation.
	Adds a special character (only when entering a call macro).
	Deletes the contact.
	Initiates selection of a ringtone for the contact.
	Initiates change of call acceptance/announcement assignment.

Menu Symbols in Telephone Number Lists

Symbol	Function
	Deletes individual entries from the caller, call and redial lists.
	Deletes all entries from the caller, call and redial lists.
	Accepts the telephone number for subsequent dialling into the dial preparation.
	Indicates additional information.

Symbols in Scheduled Call Menu

Symbol	Function
	Opens a current entry for editing/deleting.
	Initiates the creation of a new entry.

Symbols in Restriction Menu

Symbol	Function
	Initiates a change to the restriction for the next function. There is currently no restriction.
	Initiates a change to the restriction for the next function. The function is currently restricted for guests.
	Initiates a change to the restriction for the next function. The function is currently restricted for guests and users.
	Initiates a change to the restriction for the next function. The function is currently restricted for guests, users and subadministrators.

Symbols for Answering Machine

Symbol	Function
	Scrolls to next (older) recording. During playback: Skips the recording currently being played back.
	Scrolls to the previous (more recent) recording. During playback: Repeats the previous recording or the one currently being played back.
	Starts the playback of the recording.
	Interrupts the playback of the recording.
	Deletes the recording.
	Switches the answering machine on.
	Switches the answering machine on. Display: There are new messages in the answering machine list.
	Switches the answering machine off.
	Switches the answering machine off. Display: There are new messages in the answering machine list.
	Display only: The recording is a new message or voice memo.
	Display only: The recording is an old message or voice memo or one that has already been played back.
	Display only: The recording is recording of an actual call.
	Display only: The SD card is initialised.
	Display only: Data transfer between SD card and PC.

Symbols for Voice Mailbox

Symbol	Function
	Switches the voice mailbox on.
	Switches the voice mailbox on. Display: There are new messages in the message list of the voice mailbox.
	Switches the voice mailbox off.
	Switches the voice mailbox off. Display: There are new messages in the message list of the voice mailbox.
	Scrolls to next (older) recording. During playback: Skips the recording currently being played back.
	Scrolls to the previous (more recent) recording. During playback: Repeats the previous recording or the one currently being played back.
	Starts the playback of the recording.
	Interrupts the playback of the recording. If you press this key for a longer period of time, the system will go back to the start of the recording.
	Deletes the recording. If you press this key for a longer period of time, all messages from the message list will be deleted.
	The recording is a new message or voice memo.
	The recording is an old message or voice memo or one that has already been played back.
	Accepts the telephone number for subsequent dialling into the dial preparation.
	Initiates entry/change of the telephone number of the substitute.
	Message is saved in the archiv.
	Opens a current announcement for editing.

Symbol	Function
	Display: The announcement is switched on for the call acceptance of the voice mailbox. Switches the announcement for the call acceptance of the voice mailbox off.
	Display:The announcement is switched off for the call acceptance of the voice mailbox. Switches the announcement for the call acceptance of the voice mailbox on.

Basic Knowledge Configuration Software COMfortel Set

This section provides a general overview of the configuration software COMfortel Set. It describes how to install and generally operate the configuration software.

Moreover, you can find tips on how to use the help in a targeted and efficient manner.

Topics

– Configuration Software COMfortel Set (page 58)
– Help (page 67)

Configuration Software COMfortel Set

The configuration software COMfortel Set lets you easily set up the system telephone on your computer.

Minimum Requirements for PC for Using COMfortel Set

The computer must meet the following requirements:

- PC with Intel Pentium 1 GHz or compatible processor
- Windows 7 32-/64-bit, Windows 8/8.1 32-/64-bit, Mac OS X (as of 10.5), Linux (as of Kernel 2.6)
- Memory (RAM: 256 MB, recommended 512 MB; for Windows 7/Windows 8/8.1: 1 GB, for 64-bit, 2 GB
- 37 MB free hard disk space for COMfortel Set
- 85 MB free hard disk space for Java Runtime
- USB interface (if will be used): USB specification 1.1 or 2.0
- Mouse or compatible pointing device
- SVGA graphics card with a resolution of 800 x 600, recommended 1024 x 768, and 65536 colours (16 bit)

Starting COMfortel Set

In order to start COMfortel Set, double-click the program shortcut on your computer desktop.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Click **Start > All programs > Auerswald > COMfortel > COMfortel Set**.

   You are asked whether you would like to open a configuration file or a telephone configuration.

2. If you would like to instead create a new configuration, click **Cancel**.

Exiting COMfortel Set

1. Open the menu **File > Quit**.

   If you have opened a configuration, you are asked whether you would like to save the configuration beforehand.

2. If you have already saved the configuration, click **No**.

Configuring the Language of the Configuration Software

1. Open the menu **Options > Language...**.
2. Select the desired language from the list field.
3. Click **OK**.
4. Quit COMfortel Set and restart it.

Configuring Interface Used

Requirements:

– Existing PC connection to a PC interface on the PBX or a connected system telephone

1. Open the menu **Options > Interface...**.
2. In the **Interface** list field, select one of the following options:

   IP network: Enable the existing connection via the Ethernet interface on the PBX for carrying out the transmission.

   USB: Enable the existing connection via the USB interface on the PBX for carrying out the transmission. (No other action is required.)

   Note: For an indirect PC connection to the system telephone to be configured, the selection **IP network** is significantly faster than via other selections.

   ---

3. In the **IP address** entry field, enter the IP address of the PBX. Possible entries:

   IP address with areas from 0 to 255 (example: 192.168.0.240)

4. in the **IP port (default: 7002)** entry field, enter the configuration port for system telephones on the PBX. Possible entries:

   1 to **65535**

5. Click **OK**.

Installing COMfortel Set

Requirements:

– Installation file (comftelset.exe) saved on a data storage medium (PC)

> **Note:** You can find the required installation file on the Internet (see **www.auerswald.de** under **Service > Products > Phones > COMfortel 1200/1400/1600/2600 > Download**).

1. Start installation file (comftelset.exe) on the PC.

   The software installation is started.

2. Follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

Opening Configuration

You can open the configuration of the telephone or a configuration file saved on the hard disk.

> **Note:** Since the administrator may block parts of the system telephone, you may not be able to make all settings on a telephone if you are logged in as a user or a sub-administrator (see chapter Settings > Protection from Unauthorised Access.

Opening the Telephone Configuration

Requirements:

– An existing PC connection configured correctly in COMfortel Set to a PC interface on the PBX or another connected system telephone

– MSN configured for the system telephone

– Knowledge of the required PIN

1. Click **Open** or open the menu **File > Open**.
2. Click **Telephone**.

   The **Connection routes** dialogue with the devices connected via the interface configured above opens.
3. Select the telephone whose configuration you would like to open and click **OK**.

   The **PIN entry** dialogue opens.

   Note: For operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX access to the telephone is only possible via the 6-digit PIN assigned in the PBX. You need to first select which PIN you would like to enter based on the authority level: the Admin PIN, one of the subadmin PINs or the user PIN that belongs to the telephone.

   ---
4. Enter the associated PIN and click **OK**.

   The configuration is loaded from the telephone. This may take a while.

Opening a Configuration File

Requirements:

– Configuration file (.cf2) saved on the hard disk*

In order to open one of the files previously saved with this program, open the menu **File > Related files** and select the file.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Click **Open** or open the menu **File > Open**.
2. Click **File**.

   A dialogue for selecting the file with the configuration data opens.
3. Switch to the directory where the file is located and select the file.
4. Click **Open** (this text is dependent on the operating system used).

Creating a New Configuration

If you would like to, for example, to create a configuration for a telephone before the required connection to the PBX or to the PC has been established, you can open an empty configuration as described in the following. In this case, you also need to specify the number and position of the existing expansion modules in the configuration of a COMfortel 1400.

1. Open the menu **File > New**.
2. In the upper list field, select the type of telephone **COMfortel 1400**.
3. In the lower list field, select the type of PBX.
4. Click **OK**.

Saving Configuration

The configuration can be saved on the telephone or as a file on the PC.

Saving Configuration on Telephone

Requirements:

– *An existing PC connection configured correctly in COMfortel Set to a PC interface on the PBX or another connected system telephone*

– *MSN configured for the system telephone*

1. Click **Save** or open the menu **File > Save**.
2. Click **Telephone**.

   The **Connection routes** dialogue with the devices connected via the interface configured above opens.
3. Select the telephone on which you would like to save the configuration and click **OK**.

   The **PIN entry** dialogue opens.

Note: For operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX access to the telephone is only possible via the 6-digit PIN assigned in the PBX. You need to first select which PIN you would

like to enter based on the authority level: the Admin PIN, one of the subadmin PINs or the user PIN that belongs to the telephone.

4. Enter the associated PIN and click **OK**.

   The configuration is saved on the telephone. This may take a while.

Saving Configuration File on PC

1. Click **Save** or open the menu **File > Save**.
2. Click **File**.

   A file location dialogue opens.
3. Select the directory in which you would like to save the file.
4. Enter a name for the *.cf2 file and click **Save** (this text is dependent on the operating system used).

Close the Configuration

1. Open the menu **File > Close**.

   You will be asked whether you would like to save the configuration beforehand.
2. If you have already saved the configuration, click **No**.

Using Print Functions

1. Click **Print** or open the menu **File > Printing**.
2. Select or clear the **Assign function keys** check box.
   - ☑ Lettering labels with the current function key assignment are printed.
   - ☐ The lettering labels are not printed.
3. Select or clear the **Telephone book** check box.

☑ The telephone book in the configuration is printed.

☐ The telephone book is not printed.

4. Select or clear the **Project list** check box.

   ☑ The project list in the configuration is printed.

   ☐ The project list is not printed.

5. Click **OK**.

   If you have selected the **Assign function keys** check box, a print preview dialogue for viewing the lettering labels opens.

   Note: If you have cleared the **Assign function keys** check box, proceed to the penultimate step.

   ---

6. If you would like to configure the colour settings for the lettering labels, click **Colour selection**.

   a) Click **Change** next to one of the following options:

      Colour of the text for level 1: Enables changes to the colour of the text at level 1.

      Colour of the text for level 2: Enables changes to the colour of the text at level 2.

      Background colour: Enables changes to the background colour.

   b) Change the colour as you like, and click **OK**.

   c) Select or clear the **Use these colours for all labels** check box.

   ☑ The colour settings are used for the print out all of the lettering labels.

   ☐ The colour settings are only used for the print out of the lettering label shown.

   d) Click **OK**.

7. In the list field under the **Colour selection** button, select one of the following options:

   centre justified text: Enables centre justified text.

   left-aligned: Enables left-aligned text.

   Note: In the factory settings, the text is centre justified.

   ---

8. Click **OK**.

   The print dialogue for the operating system opens.

9. Click **OK** (this text is dependent on the operating system used).

Operating Instructions for COMfortel Set

The operating instructions for COMfortel Set contain the following topics:

- Navigation
- Entry and Selection Fields
- Creating and Deleting Table Entries

Navigating in COMfortel Set

After opening a configuration, the current areas are displayed in a directory tree. To show the organisation of the topics clearly, most topics have been consolidated under a main topic.

Click the desired main topic or the plus sign next to the main topic to open the underlying list of topics. Then click the topic you want.

The topic you have chosen opens on the page to the right.

You can select sub-topics directly on some pages by clicking tabs.

Entry and Selection Fields

Note: The menu bar is not required for processing the page. All entries and changes are made using the mouse or keyboard directly in the pages.

An empty field normally indicates that a name or number is to be entered. Click within the field in question and use the keyboard to enter a number or desired text.

In order to change an existing entry, double-click the entry to be overwritten. The field then becomes blue and can either be overwritten directly or the existing text can be deleted using the delete/backspace key.

For functions that offer more than just being switched on and off but only have a few options to choose from, the field already contains a default setting. To change this, click the opened list field to make a selection.

- If this is a single field with an arrow pointing downward, open the list field by clicking the field.
- If there are multiple fields in a table column (without an arrow pointing downward), open the list field by double-clicking the field.

For some functions, a small circular button (radio button) is located next to the setting options listed. The selected setting is indicated by a black dot inside the circle. The setting is changed by clicking an empty circle. Selecting this setting option simultaneously deactivates any other previous selection.

A square check box indicates a switching function. An empty check box means "off" and "no"; a check mark on the other hand, means "on" and "yes". The switchover is done by simply clicking the box.

Creating and Deleting List Entries

To create new list entries, fill the empty entry fields in the lower table row. Additional rows are then added to the list.

To delete an entry, an entire line can be deleted. To do this, double-click in an field in the line to be deleted. The field is then selected as indicated by the colour change. Right-clicking opens a menu. Click **Delete**. You can delete multiple fields by dragging your mouse with the left mouse button pressed to select multiple fields.

Help

Via the help you can access the entire operation and configuration instruction for the system telephone.

Opening the Help Topic-Relevantly

Below the directory tree, there is a window containing left to several help topics. The offered help topics refer to the currently open configuration page.

- Click the link to go to the desired help topic.

  The corresponding help page opens. You can navigate back and forward within the selected topic by clicking the > and < symbols.

- Press the key F1.

  The help opens and displays the description of the configuration software.

Note: You can always access the entire operating and configuration instructions for the system telephone via the navigation.

Navigating in the Help Window

There are several ways to navigate through the help.

Navigating via the Table of Contents

Click the **Table of Contents** (this text is dependent on the operating system used) tab to go to the table of contents (the tab is highlighted in yellow)

The table of contents will be displayed on the left-hand side of the help window as a directory tree.

By clicking one of the topics in the table of contents, you can open the belonging help page on the right-hand side of the help window.

The symbol indicates that further topics are available under a specific topic. Click this symbol to expand the subordinate topics. You can close the subordinate topics again by clicking the symbol.

Note:

The table of contents area and the selected page are separated by a vertical line or a scroll bar. To enlarge the area (this automatically makes the other areas smaller), click and hold the cursor above the separator line and slide the line to the location you want. This setting only applies to the help window currently open.

The currently opened topic is highlighted in the table of contents (for example, with a grey background). Scrolling through the table of contents may cause this highlighting to disappear. By clicking the symbol in the help window, you can display the currently open help page in the table of contents again.

Navigating via Expanding Texts

Some help texts contain expanding texts that flip down. Expanding text is indicated by a blue font and is underlined. In addition, the symbol is shown behind the expanding text.

You can expand the text by clicking the symbol or the line. You can close the text again by clicking the symbol or the line.

Navigating via the Index

Click the **Index** (this text is dependent on the operating system used) tab to go to the index (the tab is highlighted in yellow)

The index will be displayed on the left-hand side of the help window.

By clicking a letter of the alphabet, you can go directly to the keywords under this letter.

By clicking the desired keyword, you can open the belonging help page on the right-hand side of the help window.

Note:

The index area and the selected page are separated by a vertical line or a scroll bar. To enlarge the area (this automatically makes the other areas smaller), click and hold the cursor above the separator line and slide the line to the location you want. This setting only applies to the help window currently open.

By clicking the symbol in the help window, you can display the currently open help page in the table of contents.

Navigating by Browsing

By clicking the symbol, you can go to the next page of the instruction.

By clicking the symbol, you can go to the previous page of the instruction.

Navigating via the Back Button

Clicking the symbol takes you back to the previously opened help page.

Note: You may have to scroll back to the beginning of the currently displayed help page in order to access the symbol.

Navigating via Links

Some help texts contain left to subordinate topics or to more detailed information. A link is indicated by a blue font and is underlined.

By clicking a link, you can go to the belonging help page.

Navigating via Breadcrumbs

The path you took to get to the currently open page is displayed above the help text. The path consists of the titles of the topics superordinate to the current topic. The superordinate topics are shown in a blue font and the current topic is shown in a grey font.

By clicking a superordinate topic, you can go to the belonging help page.

Searching in the Help

You can search the entire help for one or several terms.

1. Click the **Search** tab (this text is dependent on the operating system used).

The tab is activated (it is highlighted in yellow). The left area of the help window contains a input field for the keywords and a button for starting the search.

2. Enter the desired term in the entry fields.

Note:

The character * can be used as a placeholder (wildcard) in a search. A search using teleph* results, e.g., in hits for telephone, telephoning and telephone book.

If you enter several terms, the Help texts which contain all these keywords will be displayed irrespective of the sequence and context.

---

3. Click **Search** (this text is dependent on the operating system used).

   Help is searched; this may take some time. Afterwards, the topics that contain the search term are listed. The sequence within this list is determined by the number of hits and the importance of the search term found. The higher the value displayed under **in %**, the more important the help text is to the search.

4. Click the desired **Title** within the list.

   The corresponding help page will be opened on the right-hand side of the help window.

Note:

Some browsers also highlight the identified search terms within the help text.

The search area and the selected page are separated by a vertical line or a scroll bar. To enlarge the area (this automatically makes the other areas smaller), click and hold the cursor above the separator line and slide the line to the location you want. This setting only applies to the help window currently open.

By clicking the symbol in the help window, you can display the currently open help page in the table of contents.

Printing from within the Help

You can print the currently displayed help page using the print function of the help.

Note:

If the displayed help page includes expanding texts, expand all texts you want to print.

If you want to print only part of the displayed help page, mark the corresponding text by clicking and drawing with the left mouse key. Afterwards, select **Selection** as print area in the print dialogue box.

1. In the help window, click the symbol.

   The print dialogue box opens.

2. Select the desired printer.

3. Click **Print**.

Symbols in the Help Window

Clicking the symbol takes you back to the previously opened help page.

Clicking the symbol takes you to the next page of the instruction.

Clicking the symbol takes you back to the previous page of the instruction.

Clicking the symbol displays the opened help page in the table of contents.

Display: The expanding text is currently closed.
You can open the text by clicking the symbol or the line.

 Display: The expanding text is currently shown.
You can hide the text by clicking the symbol or the line.

Clicking the symbol opens the print dialogue box.

Display: Subordinate topics are closed.
Clicking the symbol opens the subordinate topics.

Display: Subordinate topics are shown.
Clicking the symbol closes the subordinate topics.

Display: The topic does not have any subordinate topics.
Clicking the symbol opens the corresponding help page.

Telephoning

This section describes the various types of telephoning that your telephone provides.

Topics

– Incoming Calls (page 73)
– Call Waiting Calls (page 77)
– Outgoing Calls (page 80)
– Calls (page 87)
– Query Calls (page 90)
– Transfer (page 94)
– Conference Calls (page 98)
– Hands-free Calling (page 101)
– Loudspeaker Listening (page 103)
– Headset Calls (page 104)

Incoming Calls

The following types of calls apply to incoming calls:

- Alarm calls
- External calls
- Internal calls
- Group calling (a call directed to a group)
- InterCom calls
- External callback calls
- Internal callback calls
- Scheduled calls
- Door calls
- Call deblocker calls (calls enabled despite do-not-disturb)
- Wake-up calls
- Other calls

Options During an Incoming Call

During an incoming call, the following actions are possible:

Accept an Incoming Call

If you receive a call and would like to talk with the caller, you can accept the incoming call as you would normally by picking up the receiver.

Reject an Incoming Call

If you receive a call but you do not want to talk to the caller, you can reject the incoming call. The caller receives a busy signal – in as far as no other telephones are called (for example, in a group call).

Forward an Incoming Call

If you receive a call but you do not want to talk to the caller yourself, you can the forward the incoming call to any internal or external destination number.

Put an Incoming Call on Hold

If you receive a call but would like to postpone accepting the call for a while, you can put the incoming call on hold. The caller hears the hold music.

Switch off the Ringer

If you receive a call but you would like to postpone accepting the call for a while, you can switch off the ringer. The call will continue to try to get through and you can accept it at any time.

Additional Options

– Forwarding Incoming Calls to Answering Machine (page 331)

Accepting Incoming Calls

When you receive a call, proceed as described in the following.

- Pick up the receiver or press the **hook key**.

  You are connected with the caller.

  Note:

  If you are not present once in a while or cannot accept the call for any other reason, the telephone number of the caller is saved in the caller list (in as far as the telephone number is available and the call type is to be entered in the caller list).

  Calls made from the telephone or from the PBX (wake-up calls, alarm calls, door calls, scheduled calls) are displayed in plain text and, if necessary, can be confirmed by tapping on OK (alarm calls are confirmed after first picking up the receiver).

Rejecting Incoming Calls

When you receive a call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **reject**.
2. Tap on OK.

   The caller receives a busy signal – in as far as no other telephones are called (for example, in a group call).

Hold incoming calls

When you receive a call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **hold incoming**.
2. Tap on OK.

   You will hear the internal dial tone. The caller on hold hears the hold music.
3. Select **back**.
4. Tap on OK.

   You are connected with the caller.

Forwarding Incoming Calls

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

When you receive a call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **call deflection**.
2. Tap on OK.
3. Enter the destination number or press the **telephone book key** to select the telephone number you want in the telephone book.

Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, external telephone numbers always with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).

4. Tap on OK.

   The subscriber is called.

Note: If the destination number is saved on the programmable function key (speed dialling key), you can forward the call by simply pressing this key and then confirming with OK. The previous function selection via the display is no longer applicable.

Call Waiting Calls

During a call, you are made aware of another call (external or internal subscriber, alarm or someone at the door) by a call waiting signal (tone).

Options During a Call Waiting Call

During a call waiting call, the following actions are possible:

Reject a Call Waiting Call

If you receive another call while you are already on a call and you do not want to speak with the second caller, or you do not want to interrupt the first call, you can reject the call waiting call. The caller receives a busy signal – in as far as no other telephones are being called (for example, in a group call).

Accept the Call Waiting Call

If you receive another call while you are already on a call and you would like to speak to the second caller, or you would like to end the current call, you can accept the call waiting call. After accepting, you are connected with the other caller. Your previous communication partner hears the hold music.

Forward Call Waiting

If you receive another call while you are already on a call and personally do not want to talk with the second caller, or you do not want to interrupt the current call, you can forward the call waiting call to any internal or external destination number.

Switch off the Call Waiting Tone

If you receive another call while you are already on a call but you would like to postpone accepting the second call for a while, you can switch off the call waiting tone. The second call will continue to try to get through and you can accept it at any time.

Additional Options

– Forwarding Incoming Calls to Answering Machine (page 331)

Rejecting Call Waiting Calls

Requirements:

– Call waiting enabled

When call waiting signals that there is an incoming call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **reject**.
2. Tap on OK.

   The caller receives a busy signal – in as far as no other telephones are being called (for example, in a group call).

Accepting Call Waiting

Requirements:

– Call waiting enabled

When call waiting signals that there is an incoming call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **accept**.
2. Tap on OK.

   You are connected with the caller. Your previous communication partner hears the hold music.

> **Note:** If you first hang up the receiver to end the current call, your telephone then rings and you can accept the incoming call as you would normally.

Forwarding Call Waiting

> **Important:** Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Requirements:

– Call waiting enabled

When call waiting signals that there is an incoming call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **call deflection**.
2. Tap on OK.
3. Enter the destination number or press the **telephone book key** to select the telephone number you want in the telephone book.

   Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, always enter external telephone numbers with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).

   ---
4. Tap on OK.

   The subscriber is called.

   Note: If the destination number is saved on the programmable function key (speed dialling key), you can forward the call by simply pressing this key and then confirming with OK. The previous function selection via the display is no longer applicable.

Switching off Call Waiting Tone

Requirements:

– Call waiting enabled

When call waiting signals that there is an incoming call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **call wait.off**.
2. Tap on OK.

   The second call will continue to try to get through and you can accept it at any time.

Outgoing Calls

Outgoing calls are calls that you have initiated yourself.

Options for Outgoing Calls

An outgoing call can be initiated in two ways:

Dialling the Telephone Number

If you have already picked up the receiver before dialling, the telephone number that you have entered is dialled immediately.

Dialling the Telephone Number with Dial Preparation

Dial preparation – first dialling and then picking up the receiver – makes it possible to check the telephone number entered and, if necessary, to correct it before the connection is established.

Dialling the Telephone Number on Direct Exchange Line Access

If your system telephone has been configured as a direct exchange access point using the configuration manager on the PBX, you will hear an external dial a tone directly after picking up the receiver. The manner in which an outgoing call is initiated is different than the manner in which a normal call is initiated, as described previously.

Initiating External Calls with Number Presentation Suppression

If you prefer that the person you are calling does not see your telephone number, you can use number presentation suppression.

Additional Options

- Initiating Targeted Exchange Line Access (A – Function Key Exchange Line) (page 180)
- Initiating a Targeted VoIP Access Point (page 188)
- Dialling from Telephone Book (page 110)
- Dialling from Redial List (page 129)
- Dialling from Calls List (page 133)
- Dialling from Caller List (page 140)

Picking up Receiver and Dialling Telephone Number

1. Pick up the receiver or press the **hook key**.
2. Dial a telephone number.

   Important: Do not forget to dial the exchange line access number for external telephone numbers or Tap on OK after **public exchange**. (Exceptions: direct exchange access)

   Note: As soon as you have dialled the first digit, you can cancel dialling by tapping on OK and starting again.

   Once you have finished dialling the telephone number, the subscriber is called.

Dialling Telephone Number with Dial Preparation

1. Dial a telephone number.

   Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, external telephone numbers always with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access).

   Note: You can make corrections, if necessary, while entering the telephone number.

2. Pick up the receiver or press the **hook key**.

   Note: If you would like to exit the menu without dialling the telephone number entered, press the **home key**.

Initiating External Calls with Number Presentation Suppression

Requirements:

– *The service attribute CLIR (selective number presentation suppression) enabled by the network provider*
– *Telephone number display enabled on the PBX*

1. Tap on to activate suppression for the next call.

   The display will show as an indication that number presentation suppression has been enabled.

2. Dial a phone number (an external phone number with an exchange line access number).

3. Pick up the receiver or press the **hook key**.

   The subscriber is called.
   Number presentation suppression remains enabled until is tapped again.

Dialling Telephone Number on Direct Exchange Line Access

Requirements:
– *Telephone is configured as a direct exchange access point via the PBX*

In order to dial an external telephone number on a direct exchange line access point, pick up the receiver and enter the external telephone number without the exchange line access number.

In order to carry out other types of calls (for example, internal or short-code), proceed as described in the following.

1. Pick up the receiver or press the **hook key**.

   You will hear the external dial tone.

2. Select **internal**.

   You will hear the internal dial tone.

3. Dial an internal telephone number.

   Once you have finished dialling the telephone number, the subscriber is called.

Note: If you would like to use dial preparation or, for example, make an entry in the telephone book or configure a speed dialling key, you must press the star key twice beforehand for internal and short-code calls.

Options for Unsuccessful Calls

The following options are available for unsuccessful call:

Initiating Callback on Busy

If you cannot get through to a busy subscriber despite repeated attempts, you can initiate a callback on busy. The PBX supports the service attribute "Automatic callback on busy (CCBS)". This service attribute is required for an external call.

If you have initiated a callback, as soon as the other subscriber has hung up the receiver to end the call, the PBX (for an internal call) or central office (for an external call) calls you. If you then pick up the receiver, the other subscriber is called. If the other subscriber picks up the receiver, the connection for the call is established. This deletes the callback procedure in the PBX/central office.

Initiating Callback on No Response

If the person being called does not pick up the receiver, you can configure callback on no response in order to reach this person without having to call him repeatedly. The function can be used for both internal and external calls. The service attribute "Callback on no response (CCNR)" is supported by the PBX. This service attribute is required for external calls.

If you have initiated a callback, as soon as the other subscriber has hung up the receiver to end the call, the PBX or central office calls you. If you then pick up the receiver, the other subscriber is called. If the other subscriber picks up the receiver, the connection for the call is established. This deletes the callback procedure in the PBX/central office.

Initiating Priority Call for Do-not-disturb

If, for example, a person must absolutely be reached in an emergency despite the do-not-disturb function, the do-not-disturb function can be circumvented by a priority call from an internal telephone.

Additional Options

- Executing Power Dialling (page 248)
- Configuring Scheduled Call as Call Reminder (page 292)

Initiating Callback on Busy

Requirements:

– For external calls: The given technical requirements for a callback on busy (for instance, not all network providers provide callback on a Point-to-Point connection)

If the connection you are calling is busy, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **recall**.
2. Tap on OK.

   If callback is configured, you receive the message **recall activated**.
3. Hang up the receiver.

Note: When operated on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX: If you would like to delete the callback, tap on ⌫ in the redial list.

As soon as the connection is no longer busy, you are called by the central office/PBX for a period of 20 seconds.

4. Pick up the receiver to the carry out the callback.

Note:

If you do not pick up the receiver within the 20 seconds during which the central office/PBX calls you, the callback instruction is deleted.

If you would like to cancel the callback, select **reject**.

If you pick up the receiver, the subscriber is called.

Note:

You also have the option of letting the central office call you as soon as one of the B-channels on the previously called ISDN connection is available. If the person for which you have set up callback is telephoning on the other B-channel, callback will remain unsuccessful.

A callback is tried up to 45 minutes by the central office/PBX. If the called person did not finish his call until then, the callback will be deleted automatically.

Initiating Callback on No Response

Requirements:

– For external calls: The given technical requirements for a callback on no response (for instance, not all network providers provide callback on a Point-to-Point connection)

– For external calls: the service attribute CCNR (Callback on no response) enabled with the network provider

If no one answers on the connection you are calling, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **recall**.
2. Tap on OK.

   If callback is configured, you receive the message **recall activated**.
3. Hang up the receiver.

   Note: When operated on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX: If you would like to delete the callback, tap on ⌫ in the redial list.

   As soon as the connection is used, the central office/PBX calls you for period of 30 seconds (or only 15 seconds for external callback).
4. Pick up the receiver to the carry out the callback.

   Note:

   If you do not pick up the receiver within the 30 seconds (or 15 seconds) during which the central office/PBX calls you, the callback instruction is deleted.

   If you would like to cancel the callback, select **reject**.

   A callback on an external subscriber is tried up to 45 minutes by the central office. If the called person did not finish his call until then, the callback will be deleted automatically.

   If you pick up the receiver, the subscriber is called.

Initiating Priority Call for Do-not-disturb

Requirements:

*– Kind of do-not-disturb configured to **All (PBX)** on the telephone of the person being called*

If the internal telephone you are trying to call is busy because it is set to do-not-disturb, proceed as described in the following.

- When operated on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX: Wait ten seconds.

- When operated on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB: Select **priority call** and tap on OK.

  The subscriber is now called.

Calls

The system telephone allows you to make internal and external calls on the PBX. Internal calls are toll-free.

Options during a Call

During a call, the following actions are possible:

Retrieving Information about a Call

During a call, you see information about the call and your communication partner on the display as well as general time information (date, time, calendar week, weekday).

Sending DTMF Signals

During an existing connection, you can use the keypad to send DTMF signals (tones used in DTMF dialling) to operate an answering machine remotely, for example. The digits dialled are shown on the display.

Mute

If you would like to discuss something with another person in the room without your communication partner on the telephone being able to hear, you can temporarily mute the call.

Additional Options

- Initiating a Query Call (page 90)
- Transfer (page 94)
- Creating a Memo (page 242)
- Executing Pickup during Call (page 244)
- Configuring Scheduled Call as Call Reminder (page 292)
- Executing Call Recording (page 366)

Retrieving Information about a Call

During a call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Tap on .

All the available information about a call is displayed.

2. Tap on OK to end the display.

Sending DTMF Signals

During a call, proceed as described in the following.

- Enter the digits and characters. Possible entries:

  Digits and the characters * and #

  The digits and characters dialled are shown on the display and you hear the corresponding tones.

Muting a Call

During a call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Press the **microphone key**.

   The microphone on the receiver, device or headset is switched off. The symbol is shown in the display.

2. If you would like to switch the microphone on again, press the **microphone key** again.

Ending a Call

After your communication partner ends the call, your telephone goes into the idle state. If you wait to hang up the receiver for a few seconds, you will hear the busy signal on the receiver and then also on the loudspeaker of the base system, in case the receiver was accidentally hung up incorrectly.

During a call, proceed as described in the following.

- Hang up the receiver.

Note: If you would like to end a current call and then immediately make a new call, press the **hook key** instead and start dialling the next number within 30 seconds.

Query Calls

During a query call, you are talking with one subscriber while your previous communication partner is on hold on the PBX in the background listening to hold music.

A query call is initiated either by calling a query call subscriber, using pick-up during a call, or by accepting a call signalled by call waiting.

Initiating a Query Call

During a call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **query/transfer**.
2. Tap on OK.

   You will hear the internal dial tone. Your current communication partner is kept on hold on the PBX and is listening to hold music.

3. Enter a telephone number.

   Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, always enter external telephone numbers with a leading exchange line access number.

   The subscriber is called.

   Note:

   If the telephone number of the query call subscriber is located in the telephone book of the telephone, you can initiate a query call by dialling directly out of the telephone book (also without previously selecting **query/transfer**).

   If the telephone number of the query call subscriber is saved on one of the programmable function keys (speed dialling key), you can initiate the query call by simply pressing this key (without previously selecting **query/transfer**).

Ending a Query Call

If you make a query call and the number is busy but there is no response, proceed as described in the following.

> **Important:** Do not hang up the receiver as this will disconnect any calls waiting or will initiate an unannounced transfer of the call to another internal telephone.

1. Select **back**.

   > **Note:** If you would like to try this with another telephone number, select **dial again**. You can then dial a new telephone number, without having to explain to the person waiting on the other line that you are trying again.

2. Tap on OK.

   You are now reconnected with the person waiting on the other line.

Options during a Query Call

The following actions are possible during a query call:

Splitting

You can use at the splitting function to switch between your two communication partners.

Ending One of the Two Calls

When you end a query call and would like to continue talking with one of the communication partners, you can specifically end the call with the other communication partner separately. Of course, one of your communication partners can simply hang up so that you can continue talking with the other communication partner alone.

Connecting Both Communication Partners

If you would like to let your communication partners speak with each other, you can connect them together.

Additional Options

– Retrieving Information about a Call (page 87)
– Sending DTMF Signals (page 88)
– Muting a Call (page 88)
– Creating a Memo (page 242)
– Configuring Scheduled Call as Call Reminder (page 292)
– Executing Call Recording (page 366)

Splitting

Requirements:

– Initiated query call

During a query call, proceed as described in the following.

- If necessary, tap on → in front of the name or telephone number of the communication partner to whom you would like to change.

  The active communication partner is indicated by a point.

  The waiting communication partner is indicated by →.

  You continue to conduct a query call. The other communication partner is now active.

Ending One of the Two Calls

Requirements:

– Initiated query call

If one of your two communication partners hangs up the receiver, you remain connected with the other one.

Or, during a query call, proceed as described in the following.

1. If necessary, tap on → in front of the name or telephone number of the communication partner with whom you would like to end the call.

   The active communication partner is indicated by →.

   The waiting communication partner is indicated by →.

2. Select **curr.call canc.**.

3. Tap on OK.

   You then conduct an individual call with the communication partner who had previously been on hold.

Connecting Both Communication Partners

Requirements:

– *Initiated query call*

– *To connect two external communication partners, the following is required: Authorisation in the PBX for* ***Transfer of external calls to external***

To connect both communication partners, hang up the receiver during a query call.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Select **conn. both calls**.
2. Tap on OK.

   Both communication partners are connected with each other.

Transfer

A communication partner can be transferred or connected to an internal or external subscriber.

Options for Transferring a Call

During an existing call, the following options are available for transferring a call:

Transfer with Announcement

In order to transfer a call, first initiate a query call, announce the call and then connect both communication partners.

Transfer without Announcement

If you would like to transfer an external communication partner to another internal subscriber, you do not have to wait until the subscriber being called via the query call accepts the call; you can hang up the receiver while this call is being made. The internal subscriber will continue to be called.

Placing the External Communication Partner in the Waiting Loop

If the internal subscriber to which you would like to transfer an external communication partner is busy, you can place the external communication partner in the waiting loop of this subscriber.

> **Note:** If, for example, you have accepted a call signalled by call waiting and have therefore established a query call, you can place this call in the waiting loop in the same manner. The communication partner to be transferred must be the active communication partner.

Calling a Third Internal Subscriber and Transferring to an Active Communication Partner

Assuming that you have gained an additional communication partner from a call, for example, from accepting a call signalled by call waiting, and this second communication partner would like to now be transferred to somebody else. You can now initiate a third call that connects the second and third communication partners with each other and then continue telephoning with your first communication partner.

Transfer with Announcement

Requirements:

– Initiated query call

*– To connect two external communication partners, the following is required: Authorisation in the PBX for **Transfer of external calls to external***

During a query call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **conn. both calls**.
2. Tap on OK.

   Both communication partners are connected with each other.

Transfer without Announcement

Requirements:

– Internal transfer destination

During a call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **query/transfer**.
2. Tap on OK.

   You will hear the internal dial tone. Your current communication partner is kept on hold on the PBX and is listening to hold music.

3. Dial an internal telephone number.

   The subscriber is called.

4. Hang up the receiver.

   The internal subscriber will continue to be called. If the subscriber accepts the call, the connection is established.

   If the subscriber being called does not accept the call, the call is transferred back to your telephone 60 seconds later (your telephone rings).

Note: In order to carry out an **open query call**, dial the internal basis telephone number + park position and hang up, instead of dialling the internal telephone number (see also the PBX manual). To make this operation more convenient, you can save the internal basis telephone number + park position

on one or more programmable function keys (speed dialling key). The LEDs for the speed dialling keys then indicate whether a park position is available or busy.

Placing External Communication Partner in Waiting Loop

Requirements:

– Internal transfer destination

If the internal telephone to which you are trying to transfer a call is busy, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **waiting loop**.
2. Tap on OK.
3. Hang up the receiver.

   The external communication partner continues to listen to hold music.

   As soon as the internal subscriber hangs up the receiver, this external communication partner is called. Once he accepts the call, he is connected with the subscriber in the waiting loop.

Note:

If the internal subscriber does not answer the call within 60 seconds, or the line remains busy during the three minute waiting time, the call will be transferred back to you.

If you pick up the receiver, you will be reconnected with the external communication partner. You can then place him in the waiting loop again. If you do not pick up the call within 60 seconds, the exchange line connection is disconnected completely (for example, if your line was busy even for a short time).

Calling a Third Subscriber and Transferring to an Active Communication Partner

Requirements:

– Initiated query call

During a query call, proceed as described in the following.

1. If necessary, tap on in front of the name or telephone number of the communication partner you would like to transfer.

   The active communication partner is indicated by .

   The waiting communication partner is indicated by .

2. Select **transf. act. call**

3. Tap on .

4. Dial the telephone number of the subscriber to be called.

   As soon as to the person being called picks up the receiver, conduct a third call.

   Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, always enter external telephone numbers with a leading exchange line access number.

   ---

5. Select **transfer**.

   Both previously active communication partners are connected.

   Then return to conducting an individual call with your first communication partner.

Conference Calls

During a conference call, you are talking with two subscribers simultaneously.

Initiating Conference Calls

Requirements:

– A query call you initiated yourself

During a query call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **conference**.
2. Tap on OK.

   You are making a conference call.

Options during a Conference Call

The following actions are possible during a conference call:

Initiating Splitting

When you end a conference call and would like to talk to each of the conference call partners separately one after the other, you can specifically put one of the conference call partners on hold in the background.

Ending a Call with a Conference Call Partner

When you end a conference call and would like to continue talking with one of the conference call partners, you can specifically end the call with the other conference call partner separately. Of course, one of your conference call partners can simply hang up so that you can continue talking with the other conference call partner alone.

Connecting both Conference Call Partners

If you would like to leave a conference call that you initiated yourself and your conference call partners would like to continue talking with each other, you can connect both parties.

Ending a Conference Call Completely

If you initiated the conference call yourself, you can end the conference call completely.

Additional Options

- Retrieving Information about a Call (page 87)
- Sending DTMF Signals (page 88)
- Muting a Call (page 88)
- Creating a Memo (page 242)
- Configuring Scheduled Call as Call Reminder (page 292)
- Executing Call Recording (page 366)

Initiating Splitting during a Conference Call

Requirements:

– A conference call that you initiated yourself

During a conference call, proceed as described in the following.

1. If necessary, tap on in front of the name or telephone number of the conference call partner with whom you would like to talk.
2. Select **splitting**.
3. Tap on OK.

   You are making a query call.

Ending a Call with a Conference Call Partner

Requirements:

– A conference call that you initiated yourself

During a conference call, proceed as described in the following.

1. If necessary, tap on in front of the name or telephone number of the conference call partner with whom you would like to end the call.
2. Select **terminate**.

3. Tap on OK.

   You are conducting an one-on-one call with the other conference call partner.

Connecting both Conference Call Partners

Requirements:

– A conference call that you initiated yourself

*– To connect two external communication partners, the following is required: Authorisation in the PBX for **Transfer of external calls to external***

During a conference call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **conn. both calls**.
2. Tap on OK.

   Both conference call partners are connected with each other.

Ending Conference Call Completely

Requirements:

– A conference call that you initiated yourself

During a conference call, proceed as described in the following.

- Hang up the receiver.

  The conference call is disconnected completely.

Hands-free Calling

During hands-free calling, the loudspeaker and microphone on the device are switched on. This option allows you to talk on the telephone even if you have no hands free. In addition, other people in the room can participate in the call.

Initiating Call in Hands-free Calling Mode

- When your phone rings, press the **hook key** or the **loudspeaker key** to initiate the call.

  The following symbol is shown in the display:

  You are conducting a call in hands-free calling mode.

- If you would like to call someone, dial the telephone number and press the **hook key** or the **loudspeaker key** to initiate the call.

  The following symbol is shown in the display:

  You are conducting a call in hands-free calling mode.

  Note: During headset operation, you can only use the **loudspeaker key** since the **hook key** is being used to initiate and end the headset call.

Ending up Call in Hands-free Calling Mode

During hands-free calling mode, proceed as described in the following.

- Press the **hook key**.

Switching on Hands-free Calling During a Call

During a normal call or a call in loudspeaker listening mode using the receiver, proceed as described in the following.

- Press and hold the **loudspeaker key** for approx. 2 seconds. You can then hang up the receiver.

  The following symbol is shown in the display:

  You are conducting a call in hands-free calling mode.

Switching off Hands-free Calling and Returning to Normal Calling

During hands-free calling mode, proceed as described in the following.

- Pick up the receiver.

  You are conducting a normal call.

- If you have already picked up the receiver or a headset is connected, press the **loudspeaker key**.

  You are conducting a normal call or a headset call.

Loudspeaker Listening

During loudspeaker listening, the receiver loudspeaker as well as the loudspeaker in the device are switched on. This allows other people in the room to listen in on the call. The call is continued using the receiver microphone (no hands-free calling).

Switching on Loudspeaker Listening during a Call

During a normal call using the receiver, proceed as described in the following.

- Press the **loudspeaker key**.

  The following symbol is shown in the display:

  You are conducting a call in loudspeaker listening mode.

Switching off Loudspeaker Listening and Returning to Normal Calling

During loudspeaker listening mode, proceed as described in the following.

- Press the **loudspeaker key**.

  You are conducting a normal call.

Ending a Call in Loudspeaker Listening Mode

During loudspeaker listening mode, proceed as described in the following.

- Hang up the receiver.

Headset Calls

A headset enables you to participate in calls when you have no hands free. This is a very useful feature, especially in certain professional areas (for example, in a call center).

Initiating Headset Calls

Requirements:

– Headset operation enabled

- When your telephone rings, press the **hook key** to initiate the call.

  You are making a headset call.

- If you would like to call someone, dial the telephone number and press the **hook key** to initiate the call.

  You are making a headset call.

  Note: If a receiver is connected and picked up while the telephone is in the idle state, press the **hook key** or the **loudspeaker key** to initiate a headset call that also includes reception on the receiver.

Ending a Call in Headset Operation

Requirements:

– Headset operation enabled

During a headset call or other call in headset operation, proceed as described in the following.

- Press the **hook key**.

Initiating Listen in Function on Receiver

Requirements:

– Headset operation enabled
– Connected receiver

During a headset call or other call in headset operation, proceed as described in the following.

- Pick up the receiver.

  You are making a headset call with an enabled receiver.

- If you have already picked up the receiver and hands-free calling is enabled, press the **loudspeaker key**.

  You are making a headset call with an enabled receiver.

Ending Listen in Function on Receiver

Requirements:
– Headset operation enabled
– Connected receiver

During a headset call with an enabled receiver, proceed as described in the following.

- Hang up the receiver.

  You are making a headset call.

- If you would like to participate with the others on the call, press the **loudspeaker key**.

  You are conducting a call in hands-free calling mode.

> **Note:** If, during a headset call with an enabled receiver, you switch off headset operation, you can make a normal call using the receiver. You can only switch off headset operation during a call using a function key configured for this purpose.

Telephone Book and Lists

This section describes the telephone book and the current caller and calls lists in the telephone.

Topics

– Telephone Book (page 107)
– Redial List (page 128)
– Calls List (page 132)
– Caller List (page 138)

Telephone Book

The telephone book is used for storing useful or frequently dialled telephone numbers along with the associated names. If a telephone number that is entered in the telephone book is transmitted during a call, the assigned name is displayed instead of the telephone number is displayed.

In the telephone book, entries (telephone numbers, call macros and comments) can be stored. Up to four entries can be assigned to a name (contact).

In addition, internal telephone numbers (subscriber, groups, door, emergency call) as well as contacts/short-code numbers on the PBX are displayed. If one of these entries does not have a name, the system telephone generates a name for the telephone book (for example, int. TN45, KW-A 05306...). The entries cannot be changed in the telephone book of the system telephone; they can only be changed using the configuration manager of the PBX. All of the contacts are displayed in alphabetical order.

Opening the Telephone Book

Opening can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Press the **telephone book key**.
2. Scroll to the desired contact.

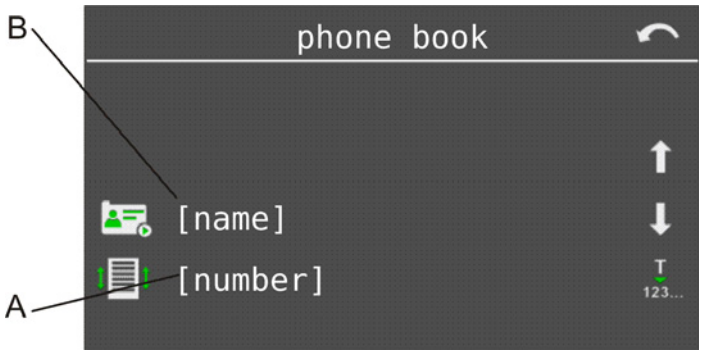
Note:

In order to find the desired contact more quickly, you can enter the first letter into the keypad.

If there is no contact for the letter entered (display "no hits") or the contact in question is not present, you can delete the letters entered by tapping on and enter another letter.

If there are multiple contacts for the beginning letter entered, you can enter additional letters to narrow the selection further.

The following information about the contact is shown on the display:



A Telephone number (for multiple entries for this contact, the telephone number last dialled or entered)

B Name (contact)

3. Select one of the following options:

Switches back into the idle state.

Opens the expanded display.

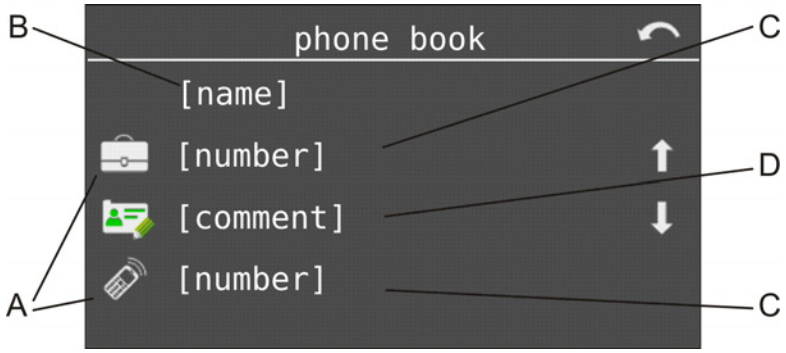
This opens the short overview.

Indicates the available comments.

Accepts the entry into dial preparation or into the telephone book, if applicable.

Note: If the displayed contact is an internal subscriber or a contact/short-dial number of the PBX, the expanded display is not available: These internal PBX contacts have only one number. Exception: If used for operation on the PBXs COMmander 6000/R/RX (with Firmware 6.0A or later) contacts of the PBX may have up to four numbers. These may be displayed and selected in the expanded display.

If you have opened the extended display, the following information about the contact in the display is shown:



A Type of entry:

business telephone number

private telephone number

mobile telephone number

fax number (only contacts of the PBX)

user defined number (only contacts of the PBX)

call macro

B Name (contact)

C Existing entry

D Existing comments

4. Select one of the following options:

Switches back into the list view.

Accepts the available business telephone number into the dial preparation.

Accepts the available private telephone number into the dial preparation.

Accepts the available mobile telephone number into the dial preparation.

Accepts the available fax number (only contacts of the PBX) into the dial preparation.

Accepts the available user defined number (only contacts of the PBX) into the dial preparation.

Accepts the available call macro into the dial preparation.

Indicates the available comments.

Opens a contact for editing.

5. If you would like to leave the menu, press the **home key**.

Dialling from Telephone Book

Dialling can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Configuring a Contact

The telephone book provides space for 1600 entries (telephone numbers, macros and comments). Up to four entries can be assigned to a name (contact).

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure a Contact

1. Open the page **Telephone book** and click the **New** tab.
2. Enter the name of the contact in the **Name** entry field. Possible entries:

   Up to 32 digits

   Digits and characters

3. If you would like to be signaled by a specific ringtone when a contact calls, select the ringtone in question in the **Ringtone** list field.

Note: If your telephone has an SD card on which your own ringtones are saved, click to add ringtones to the **Ringtone** list field. Your ringtones on the SD card are read out and added to the list field.

---

4. If you would like the answering machine to assign a certain kind of call acceptance to the contact, select one of the following options in the **TAM call acceptance** list field.

   No special TAM: When the contact calls, the call acceptance and announcement of the corresponding call type are used. The settings for this are configured under **Answering machine > Call acceptance**.

   Announcement and recording: The announcement selected for the contact is played back. After this, the caller can leave a message.

   Only announcement: The announcement selected for the contact is played back; however, the caller can leave no message.

   No call acceptance: A call from the contact is not accepted by the answering machine.

Important: A change in call acceptance/an announcement made here is only taken into account if under **Answering machine > Call acceptance** for the call type **From contact** the option **as in contact defined** has been selected.

---

5. In the **TAM call acceptance** list field, if you have one of the options **Only announcement** or **Announcement and recording**, select the announcement in the **Announcement** list field that will be used when accepting a call from the corresponding contact.

Note: If your telephone has an SD card on which your own announcements are saved, click to add announcements to the **Announcement** list field. Your announcements on the SD card are read out and added to the list field.

---

6. In the **Kind** list field, select one of the following options:

   business: Defines the telephone number to be entered as a business telephone number.

   mobile (business): Defines the telephone number to be entered as a business mobile telephone number.

private: Defines the telephone number to be entered as a private telephone number.

mobile (private): Defines the telephone number to be entered as a private mobile telephone number.

7. In the **Type** list field, select one of the following options:

   internally: Defines the telephone number to be entered as an internal telephone number.

   externally: Defines the telephone number to be entered as an external telephone number.

8. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the telephone number. Possible entries:

   Up to 40 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

9. Click **Take over**.

Note: If you want to discard your entries of the new contact and create a another contact instead, click **New**. All entries of the correspronding contact which have not been saved yet are discarded.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure a Contact

1. Press the **telephone book key**.

   In the bottom line of the display, the number of existing entries and the maximum number of entries are displayed.

2. Tap on in front of **new contact**.

3. Enter the name of the contact. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 32 digits

   Digits and characters

4. Tap on OK.

5. Select one of the following options:

Allows a business telephone number to be entered.

Allows a private telephone number to be entered.

Allows a mobile telephone number to be entered.

6. Enter the telephone number. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 40 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, always enter external telephone numbers with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).

   Note: While entering the telephone number, you can tap on to change the kind of the telephone number (business, private, mobile).

   ---

7. Tap on OK.

   The **edit contact** menu is opened. You can also enter additional telephone numbers and call macros as well as a comment (up to four entries). In addition, you can configure a specific ringtone for calls from one of the corresponding telephone numbers.

8. If you would like to leave the menu, press the **home key**.

   If you would like to configure another contact without leaving the menu, tap on OK.

   Note: When entering multiple telephone numbers or call macros, the last entry configured or changed is used as the default telephone number.

Editing a Contact

A contact that has already been configured, can be edited later.

Editing can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Edit a Contact

1. Open the page **Telephone book** and click the **Edit** tab.
2. Click one of the following options to navigate to the contact that you would like to edit.

   Start of the list: Jumps to the first contact in the telephone book.

   Previous contact: Jumps to the previous contact in the telephone book.

   Next contact: Jumps to the next contact in the telephone book.

   End of the list: Jumps to the last contact in the telephone book.

   Note:

   Alternatively, you can double-click a telephone number for the contact to be edited directly on the page **Telephone book** (**Telephone book** tab). After this, the menu for editing the contacting question opens automatically.

   Only contacts configured on the telephone can be edited or deleted. The internal telephone numbers as well as the telephone book/short-code numbers on the PBX can only be changed using the configuration manager on the PBX.

   ---

3. If you would like to be signaled by a specific ringtone when a contact calls, select the ringtone in question in the **Ringtone** list field.

   Note: If your telephone has an SD card containing your own ringtones, click to add ringtones to the **Ringtone** list field. Your ringtones on the SD card are read out and added to the list field.

   ---

4. If you would like the answering machine to assign a certain kind of call acceptance to the contact, select one of the following options in the **TAM call acceptance** list field.

   No special TAM: When the contact calls, the call acceptance and announcement of the corresponding call type are used. The settings for this are configured under **Answering machine > Call acceptance**.

   Announcement and recording: The announcement selected for the contact is played back. After this, the caller can leave a message.

Only announcement: The announcement selected for the contact is played back; however, the caller can leave no message.

No call acceptance: A call from the contact is not accepted by the answering machine.

Important: A change in call acceptance/an announcement made here is only taken into account if under **Answering machine > Call acceptance** for the call type **From contact** the option **as in contact defined** has been selected.

---

5. In the **TAM call acceptance** list field, if you have one of the options **Only announcement** or **Announcement and recording**, select the announcement in the **Announcement** list field that will be used when accepting a call from the corresponding contact.

Note: If your telephone has an SD card on which your own announcements are saved, click to add announcements to the **Announcement** list field. Your announcements on the SD card are read out and added to the list field.

---

6. In the **Kind** list field, select one of the following options:

   business: Defines the telephone number to be entered as a business telephone number.

   mobile (business): Defines the telephone number to be entered as a business mobile telephone number.

   private: Defines the telephone number to be entered as a private telephone number.

   mobile (private): Defines the telephone number to be entered as a private mobile telephone number.

   macro: Allows a macro to be entered.

   comment: Allows a comment to be entered.

7. In the **Type** list field, select one of the following options:

   internally: Defines the telephone number to be entered as an internal telephone number.

   externally: Defines the telephone number to be entered as an external telephone number.

8. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the telephone number. Possible entries:

   Up to 40 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

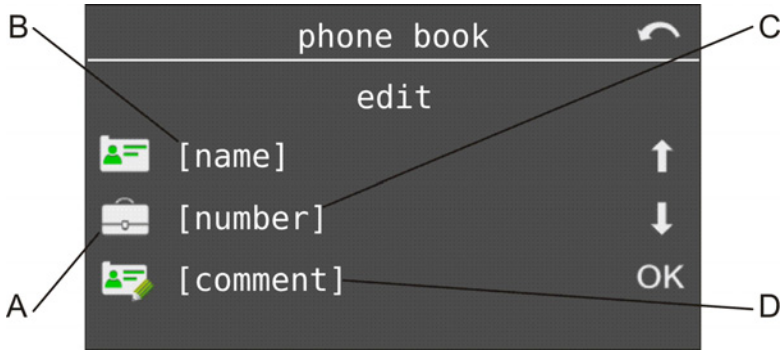
Using the Telephone to Edit a Contact

1. Press the **telephone book key**.
2. Scroll to the desired contact or enter the first letter of the desired contact into the keypad.
3. Tap on to open the expanded display.

   Note: Only contacts configured on the telephone can be edited or deleted. The internal telephone numbers as well as the contacts/short-code numbers on the PBX can only be changed using the configuration manager on the PBX.

4. Tap on to the open the contact for editing.

   The following information about the contact is shown on the display:



A Type of entry:

business telephone number

private telephone number

mobile telephone number

call macro

B Name (contact)

C Existing entry

D Existing comments

5. Select one of the following options:

Allows the name to be changed.

Allows the existing business telephone number to be changed.

Allows the existing private telephone number to be changed.

Allows the existing mobile telephone number to be changed.

Enables the existing call macro to be changed.

Enables a comment to be entered and changed.

Enables the ringtone that signals a call from this contact to be selected or changed.

Enables call acceptance on the answering machine to be changed and the announcement to be selected that is used when accepting a call from the corresponding contact.

Enables an additional telephone number or call macro to be entered.

Enables deleting the contact.

Important:

Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, always enter external telephone numbers with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).

A change in call acceptance/an announcement made here is only taken into account if under **Answering machine > functions > Call acceptance** for the call type **From contact** the option **From contact** has been selected.

Note: When entering multiple telephone numbers or call macros, the last entry configured or changed is used as the default telephone number.

---

6. If you would like to leave the menu, press the **home key**.

Deleting a Contact

Deleting can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Delete a Contact

1. Open the page **Telephone book** and click the **Telephone book** tab.
2. Click the line with the contact to be deleted.
3. Right-click the line with the contact to be deleted and click **Delete rows**.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Delete a Contact

1. Press the **telephone book key**.
2. Scroll to the desired contact or enter the first letter of the desired contact into the keypad.
3. Tap on to open the expanded display.

   Note: Only contacts configured on the telephone can be edited or deleted. The internal telephone numbers as well as the contacts/short-code numbers on the PBX can only be changed using the configuration manager on the PBX.

4. Tap on .
5. Tap on .
6. Tap on

to confirm the action.
7. If you would like to leave the menu, press the **home key**.

Entering Comments for a Contact

The comment function is used for entering more detailed information about a contact, for example, the reachability or the name of the contact partner for a company.

The entry can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Enter Comments for a Contact

1. Open a contact for editing or create a new contact.
2. In the **Kind** list field, select the **Comment** option.
3. Enter the comment in the **Telephone number** entry field. Possible entries:

   Up to 40 digits

   Digits and characters

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Enter Comments for a Contact

1. Open a contact for editing.
2. Tap on .
3. Enter the comment. Possible entries:

   Up to 40 digits

   Digits and characters
4. Tap on OK.

Note: When scrolling though the telephone book, the symbol shows whether a contact contains a comment or not. Tap on the symbol to display this.

Configuring a Call Macro

A call macro can contain numbers as well as certain control characters. This enables you, for example, to query an answering machine.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure a Call Macro

1. Open a contact for editing or create a new contact.
2. In the **Kind** list field, select the **macro** option.
3. Enter the call macro in the **Telephone number** entry field. Possible entries:

   Up to 40 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   The following commands:

   - Waiting time/pause time of 1 second

   = Waiting time/pause time of 2 seconds

   < Waiting time/pause time of 4 seconds

   W Wait for a connection

   H Replace/pick up receiver

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure a Call Macro

1. Open a contact for editing or create a new contact.
2. Tap on (not applicable when configuring a new contact).
3. Tap on .
4. Enter a call macro. Possible entries:

Up to 40 digits

Digits and the characters * and #

Commands

a) Tap on Sym to add a command.

b) Select one of the following options:

pause: 1 second: Inserts a pause of one second.

pause: 2 seconds: Inserts a pause of two seconds.

pause: 4 seconds: Inserts a pause of four seconds.

wait for connect: Inserts a pause that lasts until the connection is established. (If no connection is possible, the macro ends.)

repl/lift hands: Ends the connection or initiates, it depending on the status.

5. Tap on OK.

Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, always enter external telephone numbers with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).

Accepting Telephone Numbers from Dial Preparation

If you would like to enter telephone numbers from different lists (caller, calls, redial list) into the telephone book, you can accept them directly from dial preparation.

Accepting can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

After accepting or entering a telephone number into the dial preparation, proceed as described in the following.

1. Tap on in order to accept the telephone number into the telephone book.

2. Enter the name of the contact. Possible entries:

Up to 32 digits

Digits and characters

3. Tap on OK.
4. Select one of the following options:

Enters the telephone number as a business telephone number.

Enters the telephone number as a private telephone number.

Enters the telephone number as a mobile telephone number.

Enters the telephone number as a call macro.

5. Change the telephone number, if necessary.
6. Tap on OK.

Accepting Telephone Numbers into Other Menus

Before entering a telephone number in a menu (for example, when configuring a speed dialling key, a scheduled call with dial preparation or call forwarding for subscribers), you can select the desired telephone numbers in the telephone book. If you have already entered any codes, the telephone number from this telephone book entry is added at the end.

Accepting can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

After opening a menu for entering telephone numbers, proceed as described in the following.

1. Press the **telephone book key**.
2. Scroll to the desired contact or enter the first letter of the desired contact into the keypad.

   The default telephone number is displayed. If there are multiple entries for a contact, this will be the telephone number last dialled or entered.
3. Tap on T 123... to accept the telephone number in the menu for the telephone number entry.
4. Tap on OK.

Note: The name is also accepted – if it is needed in the menu for the function in question.

Configuring Displayed Telephone Number Range for Telephone Book

If you would like to prevent too many entries from being displayed in the telephone book, you can restrict the display of the various telephone number ranges. The following areas can be selected:

- Emergency numbers (emergency numbers configured in the PBX)
- Internal telephone numbers (internal telephone numbers configured in the PBX)
- PBX telephone book (telephone book entries/short-code numbers configured in the PBX)
- Local telephone book (telephone book entries you have configured in the telephone yourself)
- Voice mailbox (the voice mailbox assigned to the telephone)

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure Displayed Telephone Number Range for Telephone Book

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Lists**.
2. Under **Telephone book**, select or clear the check box for the number ranges listed on the tab.
   - ☑ The telephone number range in question is displayed in the telephone book.
   - ☐ The telephone number range in question is not displayed in the telephone book.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure Displayed Telephone Number Range for Telephone Book

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > lists**.
2. Select **phone book**.

   Note: To open this menu, you can also press the **telephone book key** for approx. 3 seconds in the idle state of the telephone.

3. Select or clear the check box for the telephone number ranges on the list.

   The telephone number range in question is displayed in the telephone book.

   The telephone number range in question is not displayed in the telephone book.

4. Tap on OK.

Importing the Telephone Book

This function enables you to import a telephone book that had previously been exported out of another system telephone into the telephone book on an identical model. Only the names and telephone numbers of contacts are imported. Existing comments and call macros are not imported.

The import can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:

*– A text file (*csv) saved on the hard drive, data arranged in rows and separated (semicolons, comma, tabs or your own character)*

1. Open the page **Telephone book** and click the **Import/export** tab.
2. Click **Import**.

   A dialogue for selecting the separator character opens.

3. Select the separator to be used to separate the entries into individual columns in the file to be imported and click **OK**.

   A dialogue for selecting the columns to be imported opens.

4. Switch in the directory where the file is located. Select the file to be imported.
5. Arrange how the individual pieces of data should be distributed across the existing table columns.
6. In the lower list field, select one of the following options:

   unsynchronised: All previous entries remain unchanged. The data for the file to be imported is appended to the telephone book unverified.

   Synchronise after -Name: If the telephone book already contains a name that also occurs in the file to be imported, this data set is not imported. New names are appended to the telephone book along with the corresponding data (max. four telephone numbers).

   Synchronise after -Telephone number/Text x: If the selected column in the telephone book (Telephone number/Text x) already contains an entry that also occurs in the assigned area of the file be imported, this data set is not imported. For new telephone numbers, a new contact is created in the telephone book with the corresponding name.
7. Click **OK**.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Importing Outlook Contacts

This function enables Outlook data (2002, 2003, XP, 2007, 2010, 2013) to be imported.

The import can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:
– Contacts created in Outlook (2002, 2003, XP, 2007, 2010, 2013)

1. Open the page **Telephone book** and click the **Import/export** tab.
2. Click **Import Outlook contacts**.
3. In the **Country code (0049)** entry field, enter your own country code.
4. In the **Replace the country code at the beginning of the number by** entry field, enter the code that should replace your own country code during import.

5. Under **Outlook folders to be imported**, click **Select**. Select the folder to be imported and click **Open**.

6. In the **Name allocation in the telephone book** list field, select one of the following options:

   Last name, first name: The first and last names saved in Outlook are accepted into COMfortel Set in a last name, first name format.

   Last name first name: The first and last names saved in Outlook are accepted into COMfortel Set in a last name first name format.

   First name last name: The first and last names saved in Outlook are accepted into COMfortel Set in a first name last name format.

7. Under **Outlook categories to be imported**, select or clear the check box for the Outlook categories to be imported.

   ☑ The Outlook category is imported.

   ☐ The Outlook category is not imported.

   If you would like to select the check boxes for all the Outlook categories at once, under **Category selection**, click **all**.

   If you would like to clear the check boxes for all the Outlook categories at once, under **Category selection**, click **none**.

8. Click **Import**.

9. Assign which data should be imported and how the individual pieces of data should be distributed across the existing table columns.

10. In the lower list field, select one of the following options:

    unsynchronised: All previous entries remain unchanged. The data for the contacts to be imported is appended to the telephone book unverified.

    Synchronise according to -Last name, first name: If the telephone book already contains a name that also occurs in the contacts to be imported, this data set is not imported. New names are appended to the telephone book along with the corresponding data (max. four telephone numbers).

    Synchronise after -Telephone number/text: If the selected column in the telephone book (x. Telephone number/text) already contains an entry that also occurs in the assigned area of the contacts be imported, this data set is not imported. For new telephone numbers, a new contact is created in the telephone book with the corresponding name.

11. Click **OK**.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Exporting the Telephone Book

You can export the telephone book as a text file (*.csv) using this function. This file can then be further processed with other programs which provide CSV import options (for example, MS Excel).

The export can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:
– Existing entries in the telephone book

1. Open the page **Telephone book** and click the **Import/export** tab.
2. Click **Export**.

   A dialogue for selecting the separator character opens.
3. Select the desired separator to be used to separate each entry into individual columns and click **OK**.

   A dialogue for selecting the columns to be exported opens.
4. Select the desired columns and click **OK**.

   A file location dialogue opens.
5. Select the directory in which you would like to save the file.
6. Enter a name for the *.csv file and click **Save** (this text is dependent on the operating system used).

Note: Under **Name**, if, for example, you use characters that can also be recognised as control characters during an export to *.csv (for example, semicolon, comma or tab), these characters will be accepted in the file unverified. This can lead to problems when reimporting the edited files.

Redial List

The last 100 telephone numbers dialled are saved in the redial list. For more than 100 telephone numbers dialled, the oldest entry is overwritten. The telephone numbers are saved along with number of dialling operations, date and time of dialling (for multiple dialling operations, the date/time of the last attempt).

Opening the Redial List

Opening can be carried out as follows:

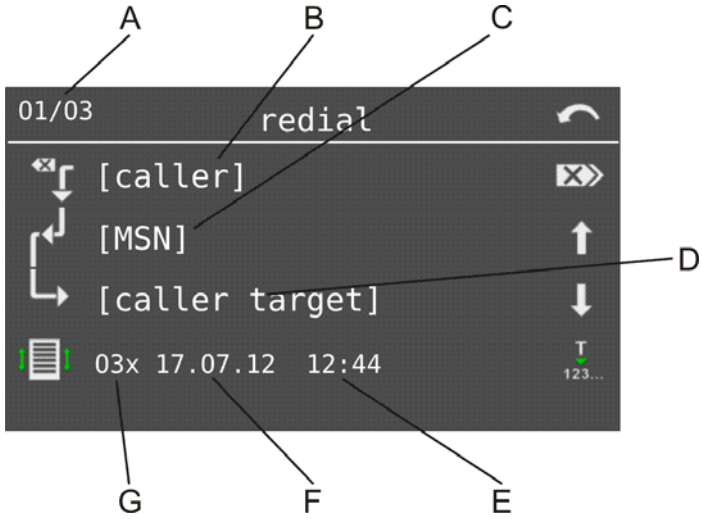
- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– At least one entry in the list

1. Press the **redial key**.

   The redial list is now opened. The entry with the telephone number dialled previously is displayed.

   The following information about the entry is shown on the display:



   A Consecutive number of entries/number of existing entries

   Note: The latest entry is displayed with consecutive number 1.

   B Caller

C Outbound MSN used for the call

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

D Call target

Note: If the telephone number has been assigned a name in the telephone book of the system telephone, this will be displayed.

E Time of last attempt

F Date of last attempt

G Number of attempts

2. Select one of the following options:

Deletes the entry shown.

Deletes the callback shown.

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Deletes the entire redial list.

This opens the short overview.

Scrolls to the next entry.

Scrolls to the previous entry.

Accepts the entry into dial preparation or into the telephone book, if applicable.

Dialling from Redial List

Dialling can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Open the redial list.

   The last telephone number dialled is displayed.

   Note: If you have already picked up the receiver when you press the **redial key**, the telephone number dialled last is immediately dialled.

2. Scroll to the desired entry or press the **redial key** several times.
3. Pick up the receiver or press the **hook key**.

   The subscriber is called.

   Note: If you would like to exit the menu without dialling the telephone number displayed, press the **home key**.

Deleting Entries in Redial List

Deleting can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Open the redial list.

   The last telephone number dialled is displayed.

2. Tap on to the delete the entry shown.

   Note: In order to delete the entire redial list, press the and confirm the action. Alternatively, you can delete the entire redial list via the function menu using **functions > delete data > redial list**.

Configuring Calls to be Recorded for Redial List

If you would like to prevent too many entries from being entered in the redial list, you can configure the list in relation to the calls to be recorded. The following calls can be selected:

- External calls
- Internal calls
- Door terminal calls
- Other calls

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure Calls to be Recorded for Redial List

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Lists**.
2. Under **Redial list**, select or clear the check box for the types of call listed on the tab.
   - ☑ The call type in question is entered on the redial list.
   - ☐ The call type in question is not entered on the redial list.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure Calls to be Recorded for Redial List

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > lists**
2. Select **redial list**.
3. Select or clear the check box for the types of call entered on the list.
   - ☑ The call type in question is entered on the redial list.
   - ☐ The call type in question is not entered on the redial list.
4. Tap on OK.

Calls List

The calls made (incoming and outgoing) are saved in the calls list of the telephone along with the telephone number of the communication partner as well as date, time and duration of the call. A maximum of 100 calls can be saved. For more than 100 calls, the oldest entry is overwritten. A previous communication partner can called directly from the calls list.

Opening the Calls List

Opening can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– At least one entry in the list

You can open the calls list by pressing a function key configured for this purpose.

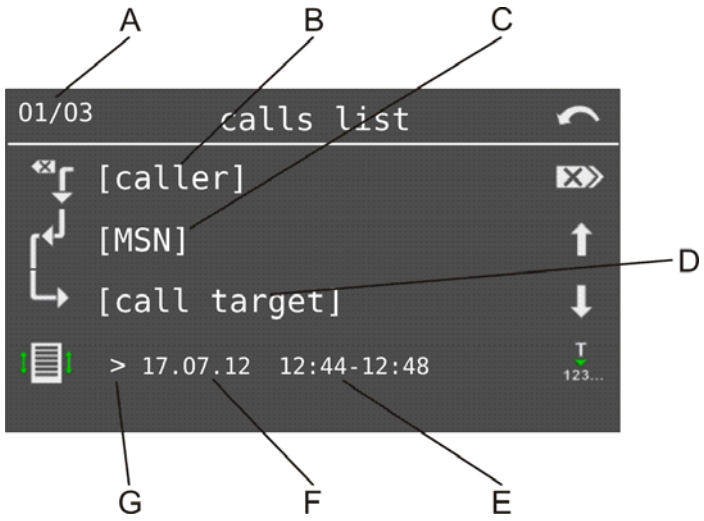
In addition, you can also open the calls list using the telephone menu **Functions > calls list**.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Tap on →2 to change from the idle state into the second level.
2. Select **calls list**.

   The call conducted last is displayed.

   The following information about the entry is shown on the display:



A Consecutive number of entries/number of existing entries

Note: The latest entry is displayed with consecutive number 1.

B Caller (communication partner)

C Outbound MSN used for an external call, external call target/exchange line number called (for an external incoming call) or project number

D Call target (communication partner)

Note: If the telephone number has been assigned a name in the telephone book of the system telephone, this will be displayed.

E Time of the call

F Date of the call

G Type of call: external outgoing (), external incoming (), internal outgoing () and internal incoming ()

3. Select one of the following options:

Deletes the entry shown.

Deletes the entire calls list.

Indicates additional information, if available.

This opens the short overview.

Scrolls to the next entry.

Scrolls to the previous entry.

Accepts the entry into dial preparation or into the telephone book, if applicable.

Dialling from Calls List

Dialling can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Open the calls list.

   The call conducted last is displayed.

2. Scroll to the desired entry.

3. Pick up the receiver or press the **hook key**.

   The subscriber is called.

Note: If you would like to exit the menu without dialling the telephone number entered, press the **home key**.

Deleting Entries in Calls List

Deleting can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Open the calls list.

   The call conducted last is displayed.

2. Tap on ⌫ to the delete the entry shown.

Note: In order to delete the entire calls list, press the ⌫» and confirm the action. Alternatively, you can delete the entire calls list via the function menu using **Functions > delete data > calls list**.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Calls List

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to open the calls list.

LED signalling on the key:

None

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Calls List

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Calls list** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Calls List

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **calls list** function.
5. Tap on OK.

Configuring Calls to be Recorded for Calls List

If you would like to prevent too many entries from being entered in the calls list, you can configure the calls list in relation to the calls to be recorded. The following calls can be selected:

- External calls without telephone numbers
- External calls with telephone numbers
- Internal calls
- Alarm calls
- Door terminal calls
- Other calls

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure Calls to be Recorded for Calls List

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Lists**.
2. Under **Calls list**, select or clear the check box for the types of calls listed on the tab.
   - ☑ The call type in question is entered in the calls list.
   - ☐ The call type in question is not entered in the calls list.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure Calls to be Recorded for Calls List

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > lists**.
2. Select **calls list**.
3. Select or clear the check box for the types of calls entered on the list.

   The call type in question is entered in the calls list.

   The call type in question is not entered in the calls list.
4. Tap on OK.

Caller List

Telephone numbers of calls not accepted are saved in the caller list of the telephone, along with the number of call attempts as well as the date and time of the call (for multiple call attempts, date/time of the last call attempt). A maximum of 100 telephone numbers can be saved. If more than 100 calls from various telephone numbers come in, the oldest entry is overwritten.

A caller be called back directly from the caller list.

The LED of the message key indicates whether entries are present on the caller list.

Opening the Caller List

Opening can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– At least one entry in the list

You can open the caller list by pressing a **function key** configured for this purpose.

In addition, you can also open the caller list using the telephone menu **functions > caller list**.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

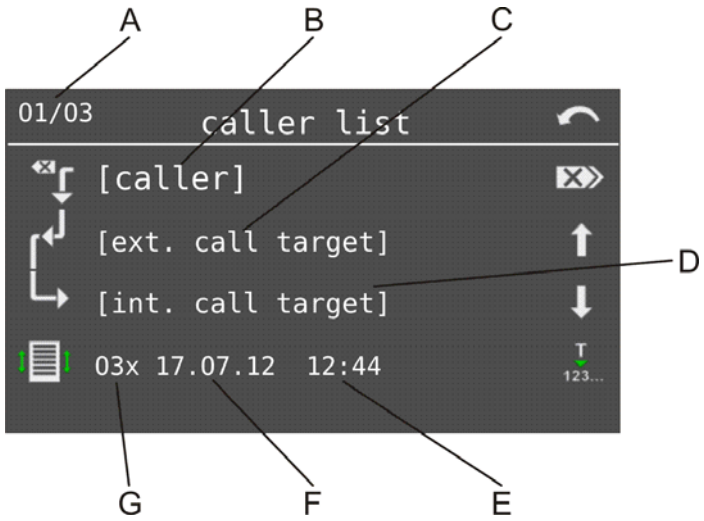
1. Press the **message key**.

   The available lists are displayed. To the right next to the selection of lists, the respective numbers of existing recordings and calls are displayed.

2. Select **caller list** to open the caller list (this is skipped if the other lists are empty or not available).

   The last received call is displayed.

The following information about the entry is shown on the display:



A Consecutive number of entries/number of existing entries

Note: The latest entry is displayed with consecutive number 1.

B Caller

Note: If the telephone number has been assigned a name in the telephone book of the system telephone, this will be displayed.

C External call target/exchange line number called (for an external call)

D Internal call target

E Time of last attempt

F Date of last attempt

G Number of attempts

3. Select one of the following options:

Deletes the entry shown.

Deletes the entire caller list.

This opens the short overview.

Scrolls to the next entry.

Scrolls to the previous entry.

Accepts the entry into dial preparation or into the telephone book, if applicable.

Dialling from Caller List

Dialling can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Open the caller list.

   The last incoming call is displayed.

2. Scroll to the desired entry or press the **message key** several times.

3. Pick up the receiver or press the **hook key**.

   The subscriber is called.

Note:

If you would like to exit the menu without dialling the telephone number displayed, press the **home key**.

As soon as a connection (incoming or outgoing) has been established with the caller, the telephone number in question is deleted from the caller list. Only when operated on the PBXs COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX: If this is a group called, the telephone number is also deleted from the caller lists of the other members of the group. (Can be configured using the configuration manager on the PBX. Group-wide deletion does not occur if the person calling back has already deleted his caller list or has been called again by the same caller on his subscriber telephone number.)

Deleting Entries in Caller List

Deleting can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Open the caller list.

   The last incoming call is displayed.

2. Tap on ⌫ to the delete the entry shown.

Note: In order to delete the entire caller list, tap on ⌫» and confirm the action. Alternatively, you can delete the entire caller list via the function menu using **Functions > delete data > caller list**.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Caller Lists

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to open the caller list.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the caller list is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	There are no new entries. All of the entries in the list have been viewed, but have not yet been deleted.
Green (blinking)	The list contains new entries that have not yet been viewed.
Off	The list is empty.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Caller List

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Caller list** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Caller List

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **caller list** function.
5. Tap on OK.

Configuring Calls to be Recorded for Caller List

If you would like to prevent too many entries from being entered in the caller list, you can configure the list in relation to the calls to be recorded. The following calls can be selected:

- External calls without telephone numbers
- External calls with telephone numbers
- Internal calls
- Alarm calls
- Door terminal calls
- Calls accepted by another subscriber
- Other calls

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure Calls to be Recorded for Caller List

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Lists**.
2. Under **Caller list**, select or clear the check box for the types of call listed on the tab.
   - ☑ The call type in question is entered on the caller list.
   - ☐ The call type in question is not entered on the caller list.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure Calls to be Recorded for Caller List

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > lists**.
2. Select **caller list**.
3. Select or clear the check box for the types of call entered on the list.
   - The call type in question is entered on the caller list.
   - The call type in question is not entered on the caller list.

4. Tap on OK.

Configuring the LED of the Message Key

While in the idle state, the LED of the message key indicates the state of the list/s available over the message key.

- LED is flashing: The list contains new entries that have not yet been viewed.
- LED lights up: There are no new entries. All of the entries in the list have been viewed, but have not yet been deleted.

If the LED signalling is disruptive or bothersome, it can be switched off.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the LED of the Message Key

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Signalling/ringer**.
2. In the **Message LED** list field, select one of the following options:

   Flashing/always on: Switches on LED signalling.

   Flashing/off: Switches on LED signalling only for new entries that have not yet been viewed.

   Always off: Switches off LED signalling.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the LED of the Message Key

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > signalling > message LED**.
2. Select one of the following options:

flashing + on: Switches on LED signalling.

flashing only: Switches on LED signalling only for new entries that have not yet been viewed.

LED always off: Switches off LED signalling.

Functions

This section describes how to set up and operate the functions on your telephone. Descriptions are given on what the functions do, how to operate them and – if possible – how to define these functions on programmable function keys.

Topics

– Exchange Line Transfer (page 147)
– Call Waiting (page 150)
– Do-not-disturb (page 154)
– Automatic Call Acceptance (page 159)
– Boss/Secretary Function (page 164)
– Follow me (page 173)
– Call Deblocker (Incoming) – VIP Numbers (page 176)
– Targeted Exchange Line Access (page 179)
– Targeted VoIP Access Point (page 188)
– Group Functions (page 192)
– Hotel Function (page 203)
– InterCom Announcement/Handsfree (page 217)
– Configuration Switchover (page 228)
– Loudspeaker Audio Out (page 232)
– Macro (page 236)
– Memo (page 242)
– Pickup (page 244)
– Power Dialling (page 248)
– Room Monitoring (page 251)
– Relays (page 254)
– Call Forwarding (page 258)
– Call Restrictor (Incoming) – Robinson Numbers (page 279)
– Power Save Mode (page 282)
– Phone Lock (page 288)
– Scheduled Call (page 291)
– Text before Answering (page 298)
– Door Functions (page 305)
– Waiting Field Function (page 311)
– Speed Dialling (page 324)

Exchange Line Transfer

A suitably authorised telephone, for example, the telephone exchange, can transfer the exchange line access required for an outgoing call to another internal telephone for a short period of time. This is meaningful, for example, when this telephone is located in a publicly accessible room and is only occasionally used for external calls by an employee.

Exchange Line Transfer Sequence

The exchange line transfer proceeds as follows:

- The requesting telephone must initiate an internal call with the telephone authorised to make the exchange in order to request exchange line access.

  Important:

  For an exchange line transfer, the telephone making the transfer needs the authority level itself to transfer external calls externally.

  The requesting telephone needs at least the official exchange line authority level for incoming external calls.

- After the function key assigned to exchange line transfer has been pressed on the telephone authorised for making exchanges, a confirmation tone is issued to both internal subscribers and the internal call must be ended.
- The requesting telephone now has access to the exchange line settings configured for this purpose on the PBX. These exchange line settings remain until the first successful, outgoing external call or until the time limitation has elapsed for initiating the external call.

Note: Configuring the exchange line transfer function is done in the PBX.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Exchange Line Transfer

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Press the key during an internal call to transfer the exchange line access to your communication partner for a single external call. Afterwards, a confirmation tone is issued on both internal telephones and the internal call must be ended.

LED signalling on the key:

None

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Exchange Line Transfer

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Exchange line call transfer** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:

*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Transfer of external calls to external***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Exchange Line Transfer

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **ext. line transfer** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Transfer of external calls to external***

Call Waiting

If you are already in a call, the call waiting function notifies you using the call waiting tone when another communication partner is calling.

Switching Call Waiting On/Off

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– Authorisation in the PBX for ***Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

In order to enable or disable call waiting, press the **function key** configured for call waiting.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > call waiting**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables call waiting.

   switch off: Disables call waiting.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Waiting

Press the key to switch call waiting on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	Call waiting is enabled.
Off	Call waiting is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Call Waiting

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Call waiting** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Pressing the key disables call waiting.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables call waiting.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches call waiting on or off.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Call Waiting

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **Call Waiting** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of switching. Tapping on allows you to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Pressing the key disables call waiting.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables call waiting.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches call waiting on or off.
6. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Authorisation in the PBX for ***Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Switching Call Waiting Signalling On/Off via Tone

Incoming calls during a call are indicated by a change in the display.

If call waiting signalling via tone is enabled, incoming calls during a call are also indicated by a tone on the receiver.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Call Waiting Signal Using Tone On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Signalling/ringer**.

2. Select or clear the **Call waiting (tone)** check box.
   - ☑ Enables call waiting signalling via tone.
   - ☐ Disables call waiting signalling via tone.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Call Waiting Signalling Using Tone On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > signalling > call wait. tone**.
2. Select or clear the **tone** check box.
   - Enables call waiting signalling via tone.
   - Disables call waiting signalling via tone.
3. Tap on OK.

Do-not-disturb

The do-not-disturb function offers the option of blocking internal and external calls as well as blocking group calls on a specific telephone. A caller hears only a busy signal. An internal subscriber can reach a telephone with call protection in an emergency using a priority call.

The do-not-disturb function has no influence on outgoing calls, callbacks, alarm calls, scheduled calls, wake-up calls or InterCom calls.

Switching the Do-not-disturb Function On/Off

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– Authorisation in the PBX for ***Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

In order to activate or deactivate the do-not-disturb function, press the **function key** configured for do-not-disturb.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > do-not-disturb**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables the do-not-disturb function.

   switch off: Disables the do-not-disturb function.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Do-not-disturb

Press the key to switch the do-not-disturb function on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:

Yellow	The do-not-disturb function is enabled.
Off	The do-not-disturb function is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Do-not-disturb

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Do-not-disturb** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Disables the do-not-disturb function.

   switch on: Enables the do-not-disturb function.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches the do-not-disturb function on or off.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:

– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Do-not-disturb

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **do-not-disturb** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of switching. Tapping on allows you to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Disables the do-not-disturb function.

   switch on: Enables the do-not-disturb function.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches the do-not-disturb function on or off.
6. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Configuring Type of Do-not-disturb

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX. On the other PBXs only the Do-not-disturb function of the PBX will be supported (see instructions for the PBX).

Defining the type of Do-not-disturb function determines how do-not-disturb works when it is enabled.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Type of Do-not-disturb

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Do-not-disturb**.
2. Under **Kind of do-not-disturb**, select one of the following options:

   All (PBX): The do-not-disturb function is carried out via the PBX. All incoming calls are rejected and not entered in the caller list on the telephone.

   Reject anonymous: All anonymous calls are rejected.

   Only contacts: All calls are rejected except for calls from contacts listed in the telephone book.

   All (telephone): The do-not-disturb function is carried out via the telephone. All incoming calls are rejected and entered in the caller list on the telephone.

Note:

Parallel to the kind of do-not-disturb, **All (PBX)**, the call deblocker (incoming) can be enabled so that the VIP numbers registered in the call deblocker on the PBX are not rejected.

Internal telephone calls are only rejected if the kind of do-not-disturb function **All (PBX)** and **All (telephone)** are used. An internal subscriber can reach a protected telephone in an emergency with a priority call if the kind of do-not-disturb function **All (PBX)** is used. Calls are only registered in the caller list on the telephone if the kind of do-not-disturb function **All (telephone)** is used.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure Type of Do-not-disturb

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > do-not-disturb > kind do-not-dist**.

2. Select one of the following options:

   all (PBX): The do-not-disturb function is carried out via the PBX. All incoming calls are rejected and not entered in the caller list on the telephone.

   reject anonymous: All anonymous calls are rejected.

   only contacts: All calls are rejected except for calls from contacts listed in the telephone book.

   all (telephone): The do-not-disturb function is carried out via the telephone. All incoming calls are rejected and entered in the caller list on the telephone.

Note:

Parallel to the kind of do-not-disturb, **all (PBX)**, the call deblocker (incoming) can be enabled so that the VIP numbers registered in the call deblocker on the PBX are not rejected.

Internal telephone calls are only rejected if the kind of do-not-disturb function **all (PBX)** and **all (telephone)** are used. An internal subscriber can reach a protected telephone in an emergency with a priority call if the kind of do-not-disturb function **all (PBX)** is used. Calls are only registered in the caller list on the telephone if the kind of do-not-disturb function **all (telephone)** is used.

Automatic Call Acceptance

Automatic call acceptance facilitates headset operation at call centers or on hotlines. An incoming call is automatically accepted after a configured amount of time. Call acceptance is signalled by an attention tone.

Switching Automatic Call Acceptance On/Off

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– Headset operation enabled

Press the **function key** configured for automatic call acceptance to switch automatic call acceptance on or off.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > auto call accept**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables automatic call acceptance.

   switch off: Disables automatic call acceptance.

Note: Switching on automatic call acceptance automatically switches off the readiness of answering machine in a telephone. On the other hand, switching on the readiness of answering machine automatically switches off automatic call acceptance.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Automatic Call Acceptance

Press the key to switch the automatic call acceptance function on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:

Green	Automatic call acceptance is enabled.
Off	Automatic call acceptance is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Automatic Call Acceptance

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Automatic call acceptance** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Press the key to disable automatic call acceptance.

   switch on: Press the key to enable automatic call acceptance. At the same time, the readiness of answering machine in a telephone is disabled.

   switch over: Press the key to switch automatic call acceptance over.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Headset operation enabled

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Automatic Call Acceptance

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **auto call accept** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of switching. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Press the key to disable automatic call acceptance.

   switch on: Press the key to enable automatic call acceptance. At the same time, the readiness of answering machine in a telephone is disabled.

   switch over: Press the key to switch automatic call acceptance over.
6. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Headset operation enabled

Attention Tone for Switching Automatic Call Acceptance On/Off

If the attention tone for automatic call acceptance is switched on, the automatic call acceptance of a currently incoming call is signalled by an attention tone. If the attention tone bothers you, you can switch it off. The volume of the attention tone is dependent on the configured ringer volume.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Attention Tone for Automatic Call Acceptance On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Headset**.
2. Select or clear the **Attention tone for automatic call acceptance** check box.
   - ☑ Enables the attention tone for automatic call acceptance.
   - ☐ Disables the attention tone for automatic call acceptance.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Attention Tone for Automatic Call Acceptance On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > headset > auto call accept > indicator tone**.
2. Select or clear the **indicator tone** check box.
   - Enables the attention tone for automatic call acceptance.
   - Disables the attention tone for automatic call acceptance.
3. Tap on OK.

Configuring Call Acceptance Time for Automatic Call Acceptance

The call acceptance time for automatic call acceptance indicates after how many seconds an incoming call is automatically accepted.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Call Acceptance Time for Automatic Call Acceptance

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Headset**.
2. Enter a value in the **Call acceptance time (0-30 secs) for automatic call acceptance** entry field. The following entries are possible:

   0 to **30**: After 0 to 30 minutes, an incoming call is automatically accepted, depending on the entry.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Call Acceptance Time for Automatic Call Acceptance

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > headset > auto call accept > call accept time**.
2. Enter a value. Possible entries:

   0 to **30**: After 0 to 30 minutes, an incoming call is automatically accepted, depending on the entry.
3. Tap on OK.

Boss/Secretary Function

The boss/secretary function protects the boss telephone from direct calls by rerouting them to the secretary. The most important difference from call forwarding is that the boss telephone can still be called from the secretary telephone and the secretary can still transfer important calls to the boss telephone.

Procedure when Calling the Boss Telephone

If the boss/secretary function has been switched on, calls to the boss telephone are made as follows:

- All internal and external calls (also call through) as well as door calls and callbacks initiated by the caller are rerouted to the secretary's telephone in question. The following types of calls are not rerouted to the secretary's telephone even when the boss/secretary function has been switched on:
  - Alarm calls
  - Schedu calls
  - InterCom calls (if permitted)
  - Wake-up calls
  - Callbacks initiated from the boss telephone
  - Callbacks after a system software update
  - Repeated calls from the boss telephone after an exchange transfer

> **Important:** When the boss/secretary function is switched on, incoming calls are also rerouted to the secretary when the function call forwarding for subscribers is enabled on the boss telephone. On the other hand, a call from the secretary to the boss telephone is rerouted if call forwarding is enabled or signals busy if do-not-disturb is enabled.

- The rerouted calls are shown on the display of the boss telephone and can be accepted by pressing the secretary key (pick-up).
- If a rerouted call is picked up on the secretary's telephone, the call can be treated normally. If multiple boss keys have been programmed, the red blinking LED on the boss key lights up indicating the boss telephone it is assigned to.

Note: On the secretary's telephone, in addition to the boss key, it is also a good idea to configure a speed dialling key for the phone number of the boss telephone in order to keep track of whether it is busy or not.

- It is possible to initiate a query call to the boss telephone or to forward a call to the boss telephone by pressing a boss key on the secretary's telephone.

Note: In order to recognise a call coming from the secretary's telephone, the secretary's telephone number can be entered into the telephone book on the boss telephone and assigned a specific ringtone.

Switching Boss/Secretary Function on Boss Telephone On/Off

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– A secretary key configured on the boss telephone

– A suitably configured boss key on the secretary telephone

- Press the **function key** configured as the secretary key.

Configuring and Operating Secretary Key on Boss Telephone

Note:

It is not possible to configure boss keys and secretary keys to exist simultaneously on the same telephone; this means that a telephone cannot be both a boss telephone and a secretary telephone at the same time.

When operated on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB: A maximum of five secretary keys can be configured on a boss telephone.

When operated on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX: A maximum of one secretary key can be configured on a boss telephone. Multiple secretary telephones must be linked in a group.

Press the key while in the telephone's idle state to switch the boss/secretary function on or off.

During an incoming call, rerouted calls are shown on the display of the boss telephone. Press the secretary key to pick up this call.

In addition, the corresponding LED indicates the status of the function.

LED signalling on the secretary key:

Green	The boss/secretary function is enabled. The secretary telephone is currently not being used for a call. Press the key to switch the boss/secretary function on or off.
Red (blinking)	The boss/secretary function is enabled. A call has just been forwarded to the associated secretary. Press the key to initiate a pick-up.
Red	The boss/secretary function is enabled. The associated secretary is not available. In this case, a caller hears a busy signal unless call waiting is enabled on the secretary telephone. If the boss/secretary function is still enabled for additional telephones, the call is rerouted to one of them.
Off	The boss/secretary function is disabled. Press the key to enable the boss/secretary function.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Secretary Key on Boss Telephone

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click the **Level 1** tab.

Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Secretary key** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the telephone number for the secretary telephone.

6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– A suitably configured boss key on the secretary telephone

Using the Telephone to Configure the Secretary Key for Boss Telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.

2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.

3. Select **first level**.

   Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **secretary key** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Tap on

.

6. Select an internal subscriber out of the list to be the secretary telephone.

   Name and telephone number are entered.

7. Tap on .

8. Change the name, if necessary. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

9. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– A suitably configured boss key on the secretary telephone

Configuring and Operating Boss Key on Secretary Telephone

Note:

It is not possible to configure boss keys and secretary keys to exist simultaneously on the same telephone; this means that a telephone cannot be both a boss telephone and a secretary telephone at the same time.

A maximum of five boss keys can be configured on one telephone.

Press the key to initiate a call or a callback to the corresponding boss telephone.

In addition, the corresponding LED indicates the status of the function.

LED signalling on the boss key:	
Green	The boss/secretary function is enabled.
Red (blinking)	The boss/secretary function is enabled. The call received has been forwarded to the corresponding boss telephone. Press the key to initiate a call back on the boss telephone.
Off	The boss/secretary function is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Boss Key on Secretary Telephone

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click the **Level 1** tab.

   Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Boss key** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the internal telephone number for the boss telephone.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– A suitably configured secretary key on the boss telephone

Using the Telephone to Configure the Boss Key on Secretary Telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select **first level**.

Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level.

The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **boss key** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Tap on 049...?.

6. Select an internal subscriber out of the list to be the boss telephone.

   Name and telephone number are entered.

7. Tap on .

8. Change the name, if necessary. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

9. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– A suitably configured secretary key on the boss telephone

Switching Boss/Secretary Function for All Secretary Keys Off

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB.

Switching this off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone menu

Requirements:
– A secretary key configured on the boss telephone
– A suitably configured boss key on the secretary telephone

To switch off the boss/secretary function for all of the secretary keys at the same time, press the **function key** that has been configured for switching off the boss/secretary function.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

- Press the **menu key** and open the menu **Functions > boss->secr. off**.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Switching Boss/Secretary Function Off

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB.

Pressing the key switches the boss/secretary function off on all the secretary keys configured on the telephone.

LED signalling on the key:

None

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone menu

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Switching Boss/Secretary Function Off

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Boss/secretary function** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

Up to 16 digits

Digits and characters

Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– A secretary key configured on the boss telephone
– A suitably configured boss key on the secretary telephone

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Switching Boss/Secretary Function On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **boss->secr. off** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– A secretary key configured on the boss telephone
– A suitably configured boss key on the secretary telephone

Follow me

Follow me is a type of "internal call forwarding unconditional for subscribers" that is configured on the respective destination telephone (instead of on the forwarding telephone). This provides the option of going from room to room and taking the calls with you.

Switching Follow me On/Off

Important: Not available for operation on the PBX COMpact 3000 analogue/ ISDN/VoIP.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **CF (groups) / Follow me***

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > follow me**.

   Alternatively, press a **function key** configured for Follow me.

2. Select one of the following options:

   deactivate all: Disables all of the currently enabled Follow me functions. (No other action is required.)

   switch on: Enables Follow me for a subscriber.

   switch off: Disables follow me for a subscriber.

   Note: For operation on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB, it is not possible to switch off the follow-me function for a single subscriber. For this reason, the **switch off** option is not available. The **switch on** option, on the other hand, is replaced by the following step.

3. Select the subscriber whose calls should be rerouted using his name/number.

   Note: Follow me can also be disabled on the forwarded telephone by using "Switch off follow-me" for the subscriber's own telephone number (for

operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX) or "CF subscriber" (for operation on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB).

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Follow me

Important: Not available for operation on the PBX COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP.

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to open the **follow me** menu. This allows you to switch follow me on or off or to switch it over for an internal subscriber.

LED signalling on the key:

None

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Follow-me

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Follow me** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

Up to 16 digits

Digits and characters

Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **CF (groups) / Follow me***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Follow me

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **follow me** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **CF (groups) / Follow me***

Call Deblocker (Incoming) – VIP Numbers

If you would still like to allow specific people to call you despite enabling the do-not-disturb function, the external telephone numbers (VIP numbers) of these people can be assigned a call deblocker for incoming calls in the PBX. The call deblocker which applies to all subscribers can be enabled on your own telephone as needed. If the call deblocker is enabled, the do-not-disturb function does not apply to callers who use one of the VIP numbers.

Switching Call Deblocker (Incoming) On/Off

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– A call deblocker configured on the PBX and assigned to the subscriber
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***
*– Kind of do-not-disturb configured to **all (PBX)***

In order to activate or deactivate the call deblocker, press the **function key** configured for the call deblocker (incoming).

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > Call Deblocker**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables the call deblocker.

   switch off: Disables the call deblocker.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Deblocker (Incoming)

Press the key to switch the subscriber's call deblocker on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:

Green	The call deblocker is enabled.
Off	The call deblocker is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for the Call Deblocker (Incoming)

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Call deblocker - incoming (VIP no.)** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Pressing the key disables call deblocker.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables call deblocker.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches call deblocker on or off.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:

– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Unrestricted numbers configured on the PBX and assigned to the subscriber
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***
*– Kind of do-not-disturb configured to **All (PBX)***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Call Deblocker (Incoming)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **Call Deblocker** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of switching. Tapping on allows you to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Pressing the key disables the call deblocker.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables the call deblocker.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches the call deblocker on or off.
6. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– A call deblocker configured on the PBX and assigned to the subscriber
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***
*– Kind of do-not-disturb configured to **all (PBX)***

Targeted Exchange Line Access

Using targeted exchange line access, you can define which MSN (your own external phone number) is transmitted for an external call and which exchange line should be used while doing so.

Targeted Exchange Line Access Variants

Auerswald PBXs support three different kinds of targeted exchange line access:

Variant A – Function key Exchange line

> **Important:** Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Targeted exchange line access is carried out and includes the transmission of a specific MSN.

When this function is defined on a key, the status of the S_0 port is indicated by the corresponding LED thereby giving you an overview of key definition.

Variant B – Function key Exchange line

> **Important:** Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB.

Targeted exchange line access is carried out along with the transmission of the standard telephone number.

When this function is defined on a key, the status of the S_0 port is indicated by the corresponding LED thereby giving you an overview of key definition.

Variant C – Function key Exchange line MSN

> **Important:** Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB.

Targeted exchange line access is carried out and includes the transmission of a specific MSN.

Initiating Targeted Exchange Line Access (A – Function Key Exchange Line)

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Initiation can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– A function key configured for targeted exchange line access

– For targeted exchange line access with the transmission of a specific MSN: Telephone number presentation activated

1. Press a **function key** configured for targeted exchange line access.
2. Dial a telephone number.

   Important: Always enter external telephone numbers with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).

3. Pick up the receiver or press the **hook key**.

   The subscriber is called.

   Note: If another call comes through before you have finished placing the call, the telephone will reject the targeted exchange line access for your next call.

Initiating Targeted Exchange Line Access (B – Function Key Exchange Line)

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB.

Initiation can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– A function key configured for targeted exchange line access

1. Press a **function key** configured for targeted exchange line access.
2. Dial a telephone number without an exchange line access number.
3. Pick up the receiver or press the **hook key**.

   The subscriber is called.

Note: If another call comes through before you have finished placing the call, the telephone will reject the targeted exchange line access for your next call.

Initiating Targeted Exchange Line Access (C – Function Key Exchange Line MSN)

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB.

Initiation can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– A function key configured for targeted exchange line access

– For targeted exchange line access with the transmission of a specific MSN: Telephone number presentation activated

1. Press a **function key** configured for targeted exchange line access.
2. Dial the exchange line access number 0 and a telephone number.
3. Pick up the receiver or press the **hook key**.

   The subscriber is called.

Note: If another call comes through before you have finished placing the call, the telephone will reject the targeted exchange line access for your next call.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Targeted Exchange Line Access (A – Function Key Exchange Line)

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Press the key to initiate targeted exchange line access. This allows you to immediately dial the external telephone number (without an exchange line access number).

Exception: In case of direct exchange access you do not have to dial an exchange line access number.

In addition, when the function is defined on the first key level, the status of the S_0 port is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Red	All of the B-channels on the S_0 port/bundle are in use.
Yellow	At least one B-channel on the S_0 port/bundle is available. Press the key to allocate the line still available.
Off	S_0 port/bundle is available. Press the key to allocate one of the available lines.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Targeted Exchange Line Access (A – Function Key Exchange Line)

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Exchange line** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the external telephone number for the PBX that you want to transfer during targeted exchange line access.

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Targeted Exchange Line Access (A – Function key Exchange Line)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **exchange line** function.

The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Tap on 049...?.
6. Enter the PBX external telephone number that you want to transmit during targeted exchange line access (without an exchange line access number and without a prefix). The following entries are possible:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #
7. Tap on .
8. Enter a name. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters
9. Tap on OK.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Targeted Exchange Line Access (B – Function Key Exchange Line)

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB.

Press the key to initiate targeted exchange line access. This allows you to immediately dial the external telephone number (without an exchange line access number).

In addition, when the function is defined on the first key level, the status of the S_0 port is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Red	Both B-channels on the S_0 port are in use.
Yellow	One B-channel on the S_0 port is still available. Press the key to allocate the line still available.
Off	S_0 port is available. Press the key to allocate one of the available lines.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Targeted Exchange Line (B – Function Key Exchange Line) Access

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Exchange line** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **B channel** list field, select the exchange line that you would like to use during targeted exchange line access.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Targeted Exchange Line Access (B – Function Key Exchange Line)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.

3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **exchange line** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Tap on .

6. Select the exchange line from the list that you want to use for targeted exchange line access.

7. Tap on OK.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Targeted Exchange Line Access (C – Function Key Exchange Line MSN)

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB.

Press the key to initiate targeted exchange line access. This allows you to immediately dial the external telephone number (with an exchange line access number).

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	The MSN on the key is transmitted during the next outgoing external call.
Off	The standard telephone number transmitted during the next outgoing call.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone menu

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Targeted Exchange Line Access (C – Function Key Exchange Line MSN)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **exchange line MSN** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on 049...?.
6. Enter the PBX external telephone number that you want to transmit during targeted exchange line access (without an exchange line access number and without a prefix). The following entries are possible:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #
7. Tap on .
8. Enter a name. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters
9. Tap on OK.

Targeted VoIP Access Point

Using a targeted VoIP access point, an external call can be initiated via a specific VoIP account.

Initiating a Targeted VoIP Access Point

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Initiation can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– Configured function key for a targeted VoIP access point

1. Press a **function key** configured for a targeted VoIP access point.

   The VoIP account is activated for the next call. The account number is displayed in dial preparation.

2. Dial a phone number (an external phone number with an exchange line access number).

   Note:

   In any case, the external phone number must be dialled with the corresponding city code, even if it is the local prefix. The special numbers provided by the VoIP provider for checking one's account status or dialling usually do not include a local prefix.

   In case of direct exchange access you do not have to dial an exchange line access number.

3. Pick up the receiver or press the **Hook key**.

   The subscriber is called.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Targeted VoIP Access Point

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Press the key to initiate a targeted VoIP access point. This allows you to immediately dial the external phone number (with an exchange line access number).

Exception: In case of direct exchange access you do not have to dial an exchange line access number.

In addition, when a targeted VoIP access point is defined on the first key level, the status of the channels for the targeted VoIP access point is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Red	All of the channels for the VoIP access point are in use (no call possible).
Yellow	Some of the channels for the VoIP access point are in use (at least one channel for the VoIP access line is still available). Press the key to allocate the channel still available.
Off	All channels for the VoIP access point are available. Press the key to allocate an available channel.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Targeted VoIP Access Point

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **VoIP account** function.

The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the account number for the VoIP account.

   Exception: For a direct exchange line access device, enter the account number starting with two leading asterisks (**account number).

6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Targeted VoIP Access Point

Requirements:
– A configured VoIP account

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **VoIP account** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Tap on

.
6. Select a VoIP account from the list.
7. Tap on .

8. Change the name, if necessary. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

9. Tap on OK.

Group Functions

In addition to internal subscribers, the PBX can also manage groups. The internal subscribers can become members of any and all groups. These groups can be used, for example, to collect the internal subscribers in certain departments or teams (Support, Marketing, Sales) together.

Membership in a group does not necessarily mean that a subscriber receives calls sent to the group. A subscriber that is logged out takes on no group functions. This can be especially important for employees of a support department, who should not be available to customers around the clock, but rather rotate in and out of the hotline.

Detailed Information about Group Functions

Important: Not available for operation on the PBX COMpact 3000 analogue/ ISDN/VoIP.

Note:

If a group (subgroup) has been configured in the PBX as member of a group (main group) and a subscriber is at the same time member of these two groups, he will only be considered as a member of the main group when a call comes in.

Subgroups (i.e. groups that have been configured as members of other groups) are "permanently logged in as incoming“ and "permanently logged out as outgoing“ in the corresponding main group.

There are three different ways to login:

Only incoming

When logging into a group as "incoming", the subscriber then finds himself in the call distribution of the group in question for internal, exchange line and door calls.

Only outgoing

When logging into a group as "outgoing", the subscriber acquires a number of characteristics/ access rights from the group. These replace his own characteristics/access rights as an individual subscriber for outgoing work-related calls. A subscriber can only be logged on in a single group as "outgoing" even if he is a member of more than one group.

Note: If a subscriber logs into different groups as "outgoing" one after the other, he will only remain logged in as "outgoing" in the group that he logged into last.

Incoming and outgoing

When logging into a group as "incoming and outgoing", the subscriber then finds himself in the call distribution of the group in question for internal, exchange line and door calls and also acquires a number of additional characteristics/access rights from the group. These replace his own characteristics/permissions as an individual subscriber for outgoing work-related calls.

Note: If a subscriber logs into more than one group as "incoming and outgoing", he will only remain logged in as "incoming and outgoing" in the group that he logged into last. And in all other groups, he is then only "logged in as incoming".

Logging the Telephone In/Out

The log in/out can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– The telephone is a member of a group configured in the PBX

*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

In order to log a telephone into a group and or out of it, press the **function key** configured for group functions.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > group**.
2. Select the desired group based on its name/number.
3. Select one of the following options:

   logging in: Logs the telephone into the group.

   log out: Logs the telephone out of the group.

4. Select one of the following options:

   outgoing: Select the type of call for outgoing.

   inbound: Select the type of call for incoming.

   inbound & outbnd: Selects the type of call for inbound & outbound.

Logging Telephone Out of All Groups

The log out can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– The telephone is a member of a group configured in the PBX
– Authorisation in the PBX for ***Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

In order to log out of all groups, press the **function key** configured for logging out of all groups.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

- Press the **menu key** and open the menu **Functions** > **log out all grp.**.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Group Function

Press the key for general functions while the telephone is the idle state to open the menu for logging in or out of a specified group. After making the selection, you still need to specify the type of call (incoming, outgoing or incoming & outgoing).

Press the defined key to execute the action configured in the key for the specified group.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	The telephone is logged into the group for incoming and outgoing calls.
Yellow	The telephone is only logged into the group for either incoming or outgoing calls.
Off	The telephone is logged out of the group.

LED signalling on the key (when defined with a specific group function only incoming):

Green	The telephone is logged into the group for incoming and outgoing calls.
Yellow	The telephone is only logged into the group for incoming calls.
Off	The telephone is logged out of the group for incoming calls.

LED signalling on the key (when defined with a specific group function only outgoing):

Green	The telephone is logged into the group for outgoing and incoming calls.
Yellow	The telephone is only logged into the group for outgoing calls.
Off	The telephone is logged out of the group for outgoing calls.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for General Group Functions

Requirements:

– The telephone is a member of a group configured in the PBX

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Group** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the telephone number of the group.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

Up to 16 digits

Digits and characters

Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Defined Group Functions

Requirements:
– The telephone is a member of a group configured in the PBX

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Defined group** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the telephone number of the group.
6. In the **action** list field, select one of the following options:

   Log out: Press the key to log the telephone out of the group.

   Log in: Press the key to log the telephone into the group.

   Change logging: Press the key to change the log in status.
7. In the **direction** list field, select one of the following options:

incoming: Select the type of call for incoming.

outgoing: Select the type of call for outgoing.

inbound + outbound: Select the type of call for inbound + outbound.

8. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Group Functions

Requirements:
– The telephone is a member of a group configured in the PBX

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **group** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Select the kind of key. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of keys.

general: Press the key to select the action and direction of the group configured.

defined: Executes the action specified for the group configured.

6. Tap on 049...?.
7. Select a group based on its name/number.
8. Tap on .
9. Enter a name for the group. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

10. Only when the kind of key **defined** has been selected: Select the action. Tap on to switch over between the different actions.

    log out: Press the key to log the telephone out of the group.

    logging in: Press the key to log the telephone into the group.

    log over: Press the key to change the log in status.

11. Only when the kind of key **defined** has been selected: Tap on to switch over between the different directions.

    inbound: Select the type of call for incoming.

    outgoing: Select the type of call for outgoing.

    inbound & outbnd: Selects the type of call for incoming and outgoing.

12. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Authorisation in the PBX for ***Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Logging Out of All Groups

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to log the telephone out of all groups.

LED signalling on the key:

None

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Logging Out of All Groups

Requirements:
– The telephone is a member of a group configured in the PBX

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Group functions off** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Logging Out of All Groups

Requirements:

– The telephone is a member of a group configured in the PBX

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **log out all grp.** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Configuring and Operating the Display of the Group Status

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Press the key in the idle mode of the telephone to display the current group status of the subscribers (logged out, logged in as incoming and/or outgoing) on the LEDs of configured speed dialling keys for approx. ten seconds. For this purpose, the speed dialling keys must be assigned to the corresponding subscriber telephone numbers. Press the key again during the ten seconds to cancel the display.

LED signalling on the key:

Yellow (blinking)	The group status is being queried.

LED signalling on the speed dialling keys assigned to subscriber telephone numbers:

Red	The telephone is logged out of the group.
Green	The telephone is logged into the group for incoming and outgoing calls.
Yellow	The telephone is logged into the group for incoming calls.
Yellow (blinking)	The telephone is logged into the group for outgoing calls.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Displaying the Group Status

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Group status** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the phone number of the group.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:

– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Speed dialling keys assigned to the corresponding subscriber telephone numbers

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Displaying the Group Status

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **Define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   First level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **Group status** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on 049...?.
6. Select a group based on its name/number.
7. Tap on .
8. Enter a name for the group. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters
9. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Speed dialling keys assigned to the corresponding subscriber telephone numbers

Hotel Function

The hotel function allows you to conveniently manage room and call data when the PBX is used in a hotel.

Function Areas of the Hotel Function

The range of features in the hotel function can be divided into the following three areas:

Hotel reception telephones

Via the display and the LEDs on the function keys, the hotel reception telephone supports various control and query functions thereby making the need of a PC at the reception unnecessary. A function key is configured on the reception telephone for each room. In addition to check-in and check-out, other functions are available.

Before check-in, the status of the room can be checked (cleaned, unclean, blocked) and changed.

As soon as check-in is complete, the following configuration and query functions can be used.

- Call charge queries including check-in date
- Interim call charge calculation printout
- Wake-up time configuration
- External access block
- Check-out

Room telephones

The PBX provides a variety of functions that may not be suitable or may even be harmful in relation to room telephone usage. Therefore, telephones configured as room telephones are blocked from not only programming functions (for example, do-not-disturb, call forwarding) but also from switching functions and special types of call initiation. This means that guests can only make and except calls. Furthermore, cleaning personnel have the option of indicating the status of the room by entering a series of numbers (cleaned, unclean, blocked).

The advantages of a system telephone compared to using standard telephones include centrally controlled delete functions when a guest checks out (data protection) as well as various convenience functions, and specially configured function keys when necessary. The functions that are still permitted on room telephones are operated in the exact same way as is described for normal telephones. With one exception: A function key assigned to the hotel room function enables the guest to set a wake-up time as well as query his call charges and his check-in time.

The following functions are still possible:

- Making and excepting internal and external calls
- Deleting data and call charges using the **Functions** menu command (this does not affect the call charge counter on the PBX)
- The use of the caller/call/redial list as well as of the telephone book (parts of the telephone book can be blocked in the telephone)
- Scheduled call/reminders and power dialling
- Call charge query and wake-up time configuration using a function key

Print function

This print function enables a printout of the guest's call charges up to that point as an invoice (or interim invoice) including an itemised list of the individual calls. This function is controlled by the hotel reception telephone.

Note: The recommended printers are listed in the manual for the PBX in question.

Configuring the Hotel Function

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 4410 USB, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

The hotel function is configured as described in the following.

- For operation on the PBXs COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX: Use the configuration manager on the PBX to activate the hotel function.

  Important: Activating is done with an activation code that you can acquire from the Auerswald Upgrade Center. For operation on the PBXs COMmander 6000/R/RX, the number of available hotel telephones (reception and room telephones) must be activated. For operation on the PBX, COMpact 5020 VoIP, the hotel function only needs to be activated once.

- Use the configuration manager or configuration software on the PBX to select the telephones that are to be used as reception or room telephones.

Note:

It is not possible to use the system telephone as a waiting field reception and as a reception telephone at the same time.

For operation on the PBX COMpact 4410 USB, a max. of 1 hotel reception telephone is possible.

- Use the configuration manager or the configuration software on the PBX to configure the print function.

- On each hotel reception telephone, assign a hotel room key each for each hotel room telephone to be managed.

Note:

If a check-in or check-out operation is in progress, the hotel reception telephone is not accessible for incoming calls during this period of time. It is recommended to configure call forwarding on busy for cases like this.

Note that the option of entering internal calls into the caller list must be activated if the hotel reception telephone should inform hotel guests of why their calls could not go through.

- Assign a hotel room key on each room telephone for call charge queries and for setting up wake-up times.

Note: In order to avoid misunderstandings when querying call charges, the value configured in COMfortel Set for the cost per call unit must correspond with the value configured in the PBX.

Check/Change Room Status on Hotel Reception Telephone

When the guest arrives, you can check the room status and, if necessary, change it before check-in (cleaned, unclean, blocked). If the room is block, check-in is not possible. The other two states are for information only.

The checking/changing procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– A function key configured for hotel rooms

1. Press a **function key** configured for a hotel room twice.

   Note: If the room data is being accessed by another hotel reception telephone or even by the hotel room telephone itself, you will be notified that the data is already in process.

2. Select **room status**.

3. Select one of the following options:

   clean: Indicates that the room is cleaned.

   unclean: Indicates that the room is uncleaned.

   blocked: Indicates that the room is out of service.

   Note: After check-in, the room status is reset to **unclean** every day at midnight.

Performing Check-in on Hotel Reception Telephone

Performing this procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– A function key configured for hotel rooms

– Room status not blocked

1. Press a **function key** configured for a hotel room twice.

   Note: If the room data is being accessed by another hotel reception telephone or even by the hotel room telephone itself, you will be notified that the data is already in process.

2. Select **check in**.

Configuring Wake-up Time for Room on Hotel Reception Telephone

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– A function key configured for hotel rooms
– Successful check-in

1. Press a **function key** configured for a hotel room twice.

   Note: If the room data is being accessed by another hotel reception telephone or even by the hotel room telephone itself, you will be notified that the data is already in process.

2. Select **wake-up time**.
3. Select one of the following options:

   switched off: Disables wake-up. (No other action is required.)

   wake-up once: Switches the wake-up time on for a single wake-up.

   wake-up daily: Switches the wake-up time on for daily wake-up.

4. Enter the time.
5. Tap on OK.

Querying Call Charges for Room on Hotel Reception Telephone

The query can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– A function key configured for hotel rooms
– Successful check-in

1. Press a **function key** configured for a hotel room twice.

Note: If the room data is being accessed by another hotel reception telephone or even by the hotel room telephone itself, you will be notified that the data is already in process.

2. Select **call charges**.

   The call charges including check-in date are displayed.

Printing Interim Invoice for Room from Hotel Reception Telephon

If the guest would like to see a breakdown of his call charges so far during his stay, you can print out an interim invoice directly from the printer. The format of the interim invoice corresponds to the final invoice, except that the check-out time is replaced by the print date. The printed data is retained in its entirety and is printed again at check-out.

The printout can be made as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– A function key configured for hotel rooms

– Successful check-in

– Printer connected to the PBX

– Print option enabled in the PBX

– Existing call charges

1. Press a **function key** configured for a hotel room twice.

   Note: If the room data is being accessed by another hotel reception telephone or even by the hotel room telephone itself, you will be notified that the data is already in process.

2. Select **interim invoice**.

   The call charges accumulated so far are printed.

3. Tap on OK to accept a printout.

Note: The number of copies configured via the configuration manager on the PBX is not taken into account; this is only information for the guest. If a copy should be printed anyway, when the question appears whether the printout is ok, simply Tap on and then select **repeat print-out**.

Blocking External Telephoning for Room on Hotel Reception Telephone

For example, if a guest, who has children staying in his room, wishes to restrict external calls, these calls can be blocked by the hotel reception telephone. This means that only internal calls can be made. External calls can still be accepted.

The blocking can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– A function key configured for hotel rooms

– Successful check-in

1. Press a **function key** configured for a hotel room twice.

   Note: If the room data is being accessed by another hotel reception telephone or even by the hotel room telephone itself, you will be notified that the data is already in process.

2. Select **external access**.

3. Select one of the following options:

   allowed: Allows both incoming and also fee-based outgoing external calls on the hotel room telephone.

   inbound only: Allows only the acceptance of incoming external calls on the hotel room telephone.

Performing Check-out on Hotel Reception Telephone

When checkout is performed, it is also possible to print out a final invoice. The printout contains an itemised list of calls made between the times the guest checked in and when he checked out. The invoice total corresponds with the call charge counter displayed by selecting **call charges**.

Performing this procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– A function key configured for hotel rooms
– Successful Check-in
– For printout of the final invoice: printer connected to the PBX
– For printout of the final invoice: print option enabled in the PBX

1. Press a **function key** configured for a hotel room twice.

   Note: If the room data is being accessed by another hotel reception telephone or even by the hotel room telephone itself, you will be notified that the data is already in process.

2. Select **check out**.

   If no call charges have accumulated, check-out is completed.

   If call charges have accumulated and the printer is connected, you are asked whether you would like a printout of the final invoice.

3. Tap on OK to initiate a printout.

   The call charges accumulated during the stay are printed.

   Note: If you Tap on ↶ instead, check-out is completed at the end.

4. Tap on OK to accept the printout and to complete the check-out procedure.

   Note: If the printout is not correct, tap on ↶ and then select **repeat print-out**.

   After completing check-out, all of the room data including telephone book, caller, call and redial lists as well as the volume of the ringer is reset. Any scheduled calls configured, the call charge counter and also any call data is deleted.

Note:

The PBX has a call data memory in which call data sets are saved and protected from power outages. If the capacity of the memory has been exceeded and has been overwritten by, for instance, calls made by a long-term guest, a note is made on the invoice that the itemised call list is not complete. The total of the call charges indicated on the invoice is taken from the call charge counter which keeps track of the charge independent of the call data.

If the recording of data associated with a particular type of call is disabled in order to save called data recording space, these calls are missing from the itemised list of individual calls on the telephone invoice. The total of the call charges indicated on the invoice is taken from the call charge counter which keeps track of the charges independent of the call data.

Later, the invoice number is listed in the call data list under the project number. This number is automatically assigned during check-in.

Cancelling a Check-out or Print Job

The cancelling procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

If you have accidentally selected the **check out** procedure or problems with the printer are preventing a correct printout, there are several options for cancelling the operation.

- Press the **Home key**. The operation is cancelled and the room remains in the check-in state.
- When the question **print-out OK?** appears, Tap on and select **cancel print-out**. The operation is cancelled and the room remains in the check-in state.
- Do not press any key when the question **print-out OK?** appears. After three minutes, the operation is cancelled and the room remains in the check-in state.

Configuring Wake-up Time on Hotel Room Telephone

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– A function key configured for hotel rooms
– Successful check-in

1. Press a **function key** configured for hotel rooms.
2. Select **wake-up time**.
3. Select one of the following options:

   switched off: Disables wake-up. (No other action is required.)

   wake-up once: Switches the wake-up time on for a single wake-up.

   wake-up daily: Switches the wake-up time on for daily wake-up.
4. Enter the time.
5. Tap on OK.

Querying Call Charges on Hotel Room Telephone

The query can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– A function key configured for hotel rooms
– Successful check-in

1. Press a **function key** configured for hotel rooms.
2. Select **call charges**.

   The call charges including check-in date are displayed.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Hotel Room on Hotel Reception Telephone

Press the key twice (or use the shift key for the second level) when the telephone is in the idle state to open the menu for check-in/check-out for the hotel room telephone assigned to the key. After this is done, any functions available are dependent on the state of the room whether checked in or checked out.

Press the key once while the telephone is in the idle state to transfer the telephone number saved in the key to dial preparation – also as an additional number.

Exception: If the phone number is currently being called, pick-up the call.

After picking up the receiver, press the key to dial the telephone number saved in the key.

Press the key during a call to put the active communication partner on hold and to dial the phone number saved in the key.

In addition, the corresponding LED indicates the status of the room telephone.

LED signalling on the key:

Red (blinking)	The room telephone is now being called. Press the key to initiate a pick-up.
Red	A call is in progress on the room telephone.
Green (blinking)	A call was made from the room telephone and the call was not accepted.
Off	The room telephone is available. Press the key to place a call.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Hotel Room on Hotel Reception Telephone

Requirements:

– The hotel subscriber activated in the PBX (for a fee), if necessary

– The hotel reception telephone function assigned to the telephone

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click the **Level 1** tab.

Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level. The second level is then blocked. If a function has been assigned to the second level, it is deleted.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Hotel room** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the internal telephone number for the room telephone.

6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Hotel Room on Hotel Reception Telephone

Requirements:
– The hotel subscriber activated in the PBX (for a fee), if necessary
– The hotel reception telephone function assigned to the telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.

2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.

3. Select **first level**.

Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level. The second level is then blocked. If a function has been assigned to the second level, it is deleted.

The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **hotel room** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Tap on 049...?.

6. Select the room telephone using its name/number.

7. Tap on .

8. Enter a new name for the room telephone. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

9. Tap on OK.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Hotel Room on Hotel Room Telephone

Important: Configuring a function key on the room telephone must be done using COMfortel Set, since configuration using the telephone is blocked.

Press the key to open the menu for querying call charges and setting up a wake-up time.

LED signalling on the key:

None

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Hotel Room on Room Telephone

Requirements:

– The hotel subscriber activated in the PBX (for a fee), if necessary

– The hotel reception telephone function assigned to the telephone

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click the **Level 1** tab.

   Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level. The second level is then blocked. If a function has been assigned to the second level, it is deleted.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Hotel room** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the internal telephone number for the room telephone.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:

– Save your configuration before closing.

InterCom Announcement/Handsfree

The InterCom function enables an announcement to one system telephone or to all system telephones of a group from any internal telephone without someone having to actively receive a call (for example, in a doctor's office).

If the InterCom destination is one system telephone, this can be programmed to switch on the microphone in addition to the loudspeaker (handsfree) so that a person nearby can speak with the caller using this intercom system.

InterCom Announcement Procedure

InterCom announcement is carried out as follows:

- Depending on the InterCom destination, one system telephone or all system of a group are called using the InterCom function.

  Note: Only the system telephones of the group which are ready for calls (e.g., not busy) are called. The individual group members need not to be logged into the group. They are also called when they are logged out of the group.

- After a few rings, either one system telephone or all system telephones of the group automatically pick up the call, depending on the InterCom destination.
- Announcement is executed.

  Note: Announcement is limited to 120 seconds due to security reasons in order to prevent possible misuse of this function (for example, eavesdropping from remote rooms).

- After 120 seconds has elapsed, the connection is automatically interrupted. The connection can be maintained if the InterCom destination is one system telephone and the receiver is picked up before 120 seconds has elapsed.

Executing InterCom Announcement

Requirements:

– Existing InterCom authorisation at the InterCom destination/s

– Configured function key for InterCom announcement

Note: InterCom announcement can also be executed from any internal telephone (see instructions for the PBX).

Depending on the kind of action configured on the key, proceed as described.

1. Press the **function key** for InterCom announcement or press and hold the **function key**.

   The LED on the function key lights up in yellow or green to indicate the existing call connection.

2. To end announcement function, press the **function key** again or release the **function key**.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for InterCom Announcement

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to dial the subscriber or group telephone number assigned to the key and initiate the InterCom announcement. Depending on the kind of action configured, you need to hold the key during the announcement (as soon as you release the key again, the connection is terminated) or switch the key over by briefly pressing the key (the key is pressed once at the start and once at the end).

In addition, when InterCom destination is defined on the first key level, the status of the InterCom destination connection is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key (when defined with an internal subscriber telephone number):

Green	There is currently an active connection to the InterCom destination.
Off	There is currently no active connection to the InterCom destination.

LED signalling on the key (when defined with an internal group telephone number):

Green	There is currently an active connection to all InterCom destinations.
Yellow	There is currently an active connection to at least one InterCom destination.
Yellow (blinking)	The InterCom call is sent to the PBX.
Red	No InterCom destination can be reached.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for InterCom Announcement

Requirements:
– For a group as InterCom destination: at least one group configured in the PBX

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **InterCom announcement** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the destination number. Possible entries:

   Internal telephone number of the subscriber

   Internal telephone number of the group
6. In the **Type** list field, select one of the following options:

   Subscriber: Defines the telephone number entered as a subscriber telephone number.

   Group: Defines the telephone number entered as a group telephone number.
7. In the **Kind of action** list field, select one of the following options:

   hold: The key must be held down during the announcement.

   switch over: A short press of the key starts the announcement. Another short press of the key ends the announcement.
8. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Existing InterCom authorisation at the InterCom destination

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for InterCom Announcement

Requirements:
– Existing InterCom authorisation at the InterCom destination
– For a group as InterCom destination: at least one group configured in the PBX

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **InterCom** function and then **InterCom OneWay**.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on

.
6. Select InterCom destination from the list.
7. Tap on .
8. Enter a name. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters
9. Select the kind of action. Tapping on allows you to switch over between the different kinds of action available.

hold key: The key must be held down during the announcement.

toggle key: A short press of the key starts the announcement. Another short press of the key ends the announcement.

10. Tap on OK.

InterCom Handsfree Procedure

InterCom handsfree is carried out as follows:

- A system telephone is called using InterCom handsfree.
- After a few rings, the system telephone automatically picks up the call.
- Hands-free calling is executed.

> **Note:** Hands-free calling is limited to 120 seconds due to security reasons in order to prevent possible misuse of this function (for example, eavesdropping from remote rooms).

- After 120 seconds has elapsed, the connection is automatically interrupted unless the system telephone receiver is picked up during this time.

Executing InterCom Handsfree

Requirements:

– Existing InterCom authorisation at the InterCom destination

– Configured function key for InterCom handsfree

> **Note:** InterCom handsfree can also be executed from any internal telephone (see instructions for the PBX).

Depending on the kind of action configured on the key, proceed as described.

1. Press the **function key** for InterCom handsfree or press and hold the **function key**.

   The LED on the function key lights up in green to indicate the existing call connection.

2. To end handsfree function, press the **function key** again or release the **function key**.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for InterCom Handsfree

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to dial the phone number assigned to the key and initiate InterCom handsfree. Depending on the kind of action configured, you need to hold the key during handsfree operation (as soon as you release the key again, the connection is terminated) or switch the key over by briefly pressing the key (the key is pressed once at the start and once at the end).

In addition, when InterCom destination is defined on the first key level, the status of the InterCom destination connection is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	There is currently an active connection to the InterCom destination.
Off	There is currently no active connection to the InterCom destination.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for InterCom Handsfree

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **InterCom handsfree** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the destination number.
6. In the **Kind of action** list field, select one of the following options:

   hold: The key must be held down during the announcement.

   switch over: A short press of the key starts the announcement. Another short press of the key ends the announcement.

7. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Existing InterCom authorisation at the InterCom destination

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for InterCom Handsfree

Requirements:
– Existing InterCom authorisation at the InterCom destination

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **InterCom** function and then **IC speakerphone**.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on

.
6. Select the InterCom destination from the list.
7. Tap on .
8. Enter a name. Possible entries:

Up to 16 digits

Digits and characters

9. Select the kind of action. Tapping on allows you to switch over between the different kinds of action available.

   hold key: The key must be held down during the announcement.

   toggle key: A short press of the key starts the announcement. Another short press of the key ends the announcement.

10. Tap on OK.

Switching InterCom Permission On/Off

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– Authorisation in the PBX for ***Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

For InterCom calls, InterCom permission must be enabled for the system telephone being called.

Press the **function key** configured for InterCom permission to switch InterCom permission on or off.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > InterCom (Auth)**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables InterCom permission.

   switch off: Disables InterCom permission.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for InterCom Permission

Press the key to switch the InterCom permission function on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	InterCom permission is enabled.
Off	InterCom permission is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for InterCom Permission

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **InterCom permission** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Pressing the key disables InterCom permission.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables InterCom permission.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches InterCom permission over.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for InterCom Handsfree

Requirements:
– Existing InterCom authorisation at the InterCom destination

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **InterCom** function and then **IC speakerphone**.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on

.
6. Select the InterCom destination from the list.
7. Tap on .
8. Enter a name. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters
9. Select the kind of action. Tapping on allows you to switch over between the different kinds of action available.

hold key: The key must be held down during the announcement.

toggle key: A short press of the key starts the announcement. Another short press of the key ends the announcement.

10. Tap on OK.

Configuration Switchover

If multiple configurations have been saved in the PBX, for example, for day, night, etc., switching over from one configuration to another can be carried out manually and/or in a time controlled manner.

Configuration Switchover Executed Manually

The execution can be made as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– At least two configurations set up in the PBX
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Configuration switching***

In order to switch over a configuration in the PBX, press the **function key** configured for configuration switchover.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > switch config.**.
2. Select the desired configuration according to its name.

   The configuration selected is switched on.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Configuration Switchover

Press the key for general functions while the telephone is in the idle state to open the **Configuration** menu. After this, you can enable the configuration.

Press the key defined for configurations to enable the configuration that has been set up.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key (only for defined key assignment):

Green	The configuration saved in the key is enabled.
Off	The configuration saved in the key is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for General Configuration Switchover

Requirements:
– At least two configurations set up in the PBX

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Config. on** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Configuration switching***

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Defined Configuration Switchover

Requirements:
– At least two configurations set up in the PBX

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Defined config. on** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. Configure the settings dependent on the type of PBX.
   - Select a configuration in the **configuration to be activated** list field.
   - Enter the identification number of the configuration in the **identification number** field.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:

*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Configuration switching***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Configuration Switchover

Requirements:
– At least two configurations set up in the PBX

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **switch config.** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of key. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of keys.

   general: Press the key to open the **switch configuration** menu. (No other action is required.)

   defined: Press the key to enable the set configuration.
6. Tap on .
7. Select a configuration based on its name.
8. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Configuration switching***

Loudspeaker Audio Out

This function enables loudspeaker audio out over an audio output on the loudspeaker connected to the PBX unit or an active loudspeaker (for example, a loudspeaker system in a department store/supermarket). In addition, a previously specified telephone number is called by an internal telephone. The call connection is immediately established after dialling the telephone number.

Executing Loudspeaker Audio Out

Important: Not available for operation on the PBX COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP.

The execution can be made as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Speaker announcement***

– A function key configured for loudspeaker audio out

Note: Loudspeaker audio out can also be executed from any internal telephone (see instructions for the PBX).

Depending on the kind of action configured on the key, proceed as described.

1. Press the **function key** for InterCom announcement/handsfree or press and hold the **function key**.

   The LED on the function key lights up in green to indicate the existing call connection.

2. To end announcement or handsfree function, press the **function key** again or release the **function key**.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Loudspeaker Audio Out

Important: Not available for operation on the PBX COMpact 3000 analogue/ ISDN/VoIP.

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to establish a connection to the audio output on the PBX. Depending on the kind of action configured, you need to hold the key during the audio out (as soon as you release the key again, the connection is terminated) or switch the key over by briefly pressing the key (the key is pressed once at the start and once at the end).

In addition, when the audio output is defined on the first key level, the status of the audio output connection is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:

Green	There is currently an active connection to the audio output.
Off	There is currently no active connection to the audio output.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Loudspeaker Audio Out

Requirements:
– An audio output configured in the PBX

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **InterCom audio out** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the internal telephone number for the audio output.
6. In the **Kind of action** list field, select one of the following options:

   hold: The key must be held down during the announcement.

   switch over: A short press of the key starts the announcement. Another short press of the key ends the announcement.
7. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Authorisation in the PBX for ***Speaker announcement***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for InterCom Permission

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **InterCom (Auth)** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on

.
6. Select the loudspeaker from the list.

7. Select the kind of switching. Tapping on allows you to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Pressing the key disables InterCom permission.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables InterCom permission.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches InterCom permission over.

8. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Authorisation in the PBX for ***Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Macro

The macro function enables a function key to be defined with digits and various consecutive commands, for example, for accessing an answering machine remotely or programming a function on the PBX.

Macro Execution Procedure

The following describes the procedure based on an example key using the following command sequence **HZ300CW2Z#22#Lg**:

- Command **H**: After pressing the macro key, the telephone switches to hands-free calling.

  Note: If the **H** command (hang-up/pick-up with the hook key) is located at the beginning of the macro, the start of macro execution must be confirmed.

- Command **Z300**: The telephone dials the phone number 300 (for example, the answering machine).
- Command **C**: The telephone waits for the connection.
- Command **W2**: After the connection has been established, the telephone waits another 2 seconds.
- Command **Z#22#**: The telephone dials the DTMF code #22#.
- Command **Lg**: The LED on the function key switches on (green).

  Important: The state of the LED remains the same after a macro is executed – until the next time the command Lo, Lg, Lr or Ly is executed with the same key. If the LED is not to be used for status indication, it is recommended that you add the command Lo (disable LED) to the end of a macro.

  If you would like to end macro execution, press the **Home key**.

  Macro execution is ended immediately when an incoming call is made to a destination that is busy or when a connection returns that it is busy. This occurs, for instance, when the other calling party ends the call or the macro contains a programming code that is not authorised.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Macro

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to execute a macro. If the H command (hang-up/pick-up with the hook key) is located at the beginning of a macro, the macro saved in the system is executed immediately. If this is not the case, you need to first confirm the start of macro execution.

In addition and depending on the settings, when a macro is defined on the first key level, the status of the macro in question is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:

Depending on the purpose of the commands Lo, Lg, Lr and Ly.

Note: If there is a macro on both levels of a function key, LED control is also performed by the macro on the second level. This makes it possible, for instance, to use the macro to switch the LED on the one key level and to use the macro to switch LED off on the other key level. This allows the switching status of a simultaneously switched function to be read on the LED.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Macro

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Macro** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Macro sign** entry field, enter the macro. Possible entries:

Up to 100 characters for a max. of 10 keys, up to 40 characters for additional keys

The following commands:

Z [digit sequence]	Digit sequence selection including * and #
W [digits 1-5]	Waiting time/pause time of 1-5 seconds
K	Switchover to keypad
M	Switchover to DTMF
H	Hang-up/pick-up with the hook key
C	Wait for a connection
Lo	The LED on the function key switches off
Lr	The LED on the function key switches on (red)
Ly	The LED on the function key switches on (yellow)
Lg	The LED on the function key switches on (green)

Note:

If you would like to configure a programming function on the PBX as a macro, enter a pause between the password and programming code sequence.

Pauses cannot be entered at the beginning of a macro.

The maximum pause time is 5 seconds. This restriction does not apply for the C command (waiting for a connection).

LED control commands are only possible on the first level. Exception: If there is a macro on both levels of a function key, LED control is also performed by the macro on the second level. This makes it possible, for instance, to use the macro to switch the LED on on the one key level and to use the macro to switch LED off on the other key level. This allows the switching status of a simultaneously switched function to be read on the LED.

---

6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for a Macro

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **macro** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on .
6. Enter a name. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters
7. Tap on .
8. Enter the macro. Possible entries:

   Up to 100 characters for a max. of 10 keys, up to 40 characters for additional keys

   The following commands:

Z [digit sequence]	Digit sequence selection including * and #
W [digits 1-5]	Waiting time/pause time of 1-5 seconds
K	Switchover to keypad
M	Switchover to DTMF
H	Hang-up/pick-up with the hook key
C	Wait for a connection
Lo	The LED on the function key switches off
Lr	The LED on the function key switches on (red)
Ly	The LED on the function key switches on (yellow)
Lg	The LED on the function key switches on (green)

Note:

If you would like to configure a programming function on the PBX as a macro, enter a pause between the password and programming code sequence.

Pauses cannot be entered at the beginning of a macro.

The maximum pause time is 5 seconds. This restriction does not apply for the C command (waiting for a connection).

9. Tap on OK.

Configuring Display Presentation during Macro Execution

This setting specifies if the digits that have just been dialled or the name of the key are shown in the telephone display during macro execution.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure Display Presentation during Macro Execution

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > User settings**.
2. Under **Display presentation during macro execution**, select one of the following options:

   Single steps: During macro execution, the digits that have just been dialled are shown.

   Name of the key/name of the contact: During macro execution, the name of the key is shown on the display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure Display Presentation during Macro Execution

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > user settings > macro display**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   title/name: During macro execution, the name of the key is shown on the display.

   macro steps: During macro execution, the digits that have just been dialled are shown.

Memo

The memo function allows you to enter a telephone number note on the telephone during a call. After the call has been ended, the telephone number can be retrieved and, for instance, accepted into dial preparation.

Creating a Memo

The creation can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

During a call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **memo**.
2. Tap on OK.
3. Enter the phone number that you would like to make a note of.
4. Tap on OK.

Retrieving a Memo

The retrieval can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– A saved memo

1. Tap on .
   The saved phone number is displayed.
2. Tap on in order to accept the phone number for further use into the dial preparation.

Note: If you would like to delete the phone number, instead tap on ⌫.

Pickup

Using Pickup, you can take a call on your own phone that was originally sent to another internal telephone.

If the call has already been taken, the call can be taken using same procedure if the call take-over has been allowed by the subscriber being called. This function is useful, for example, in the case of answering machines.

Executing Pickup

Requirements:

*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Pickup***

If an internal telephone rings in your proximity, proceed as described in the following.

1. Tap on →2 and on **pickup** .

   Alternatively, press a **function key** configured for pickup.

2. Enter the internal phone number of the telephone that is ringing. (In case of direct exchange access you do not have to dial ** first.)

   Note: If you would like to take call that is directed to a group, select the pickup for the group telephone number.

3. Pick up the receiver or press the **Hook key**.

Executing Pickup during Call

Requirements:

*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Pickup***

If you are already taking a call and an internal telephone rings in your proximity, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **pickup**.
2. Tap on OK.

You will hear the internal dial tone. The person you had been talking to hears the hold music.

3. Enter the internal phone number of the telephone that is ringing. (In case of direct exchange access you do not have to dial ** first.)

   Note: If you would like to take call that is directed to a group, select the pickup for the group telephone number.

   Once you have finished dialling the phone number, you are connected to the caller.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Pickup

Pressing the key opens the **pickup** menu. This allows you to enter the internal phone number of the telephone that is ringing.

In addition, you can press the key to initiate a call take-over on telephones or answering machines for which permission has been given (see instructions for the PBX).

LED signalling on the key:

None

Note: If you often take pickups for specific telephones, you can configure a speed dialling key for the associated internal subscriber/group telephone as an alternative to this key. You then see a red blinking LED indicating that the phone number is being called. You can press the speed dialling key and after the confirmation, take the call on your telephone.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Pick-up

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Pick-up** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Pickup***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Pickup

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **pickup** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Pickup***

Power Dialling

If the telephone being called is busy, but automatic callback on busy is not possible, the power dialling function be activated instead. When this is done, the system telephone attempts to reach the subscriber being called in short time intervals.

Power Dialling Procedure

Power dialling is executed as follows:

- The system telephone attempts to reach the subscriber being called in short time intervals (every 30 seconds).
- As soon as the system telephone dials the number of the subscriber, it switches the loudspeaker.
- The connection is then established when the person being called picks up the receiver. If he does not pick up the receiver, power dialling is ended.
- If power dialling is not successful, the system telephone automatically cancels the function after 10 minutes.

> **Note:** If interruptions occur (for example, calls that are initiated intermittently), this time period is extended accordingly.

Executing Power Dialling

If the connection is busy and callback is not possible, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **Power Dialling**.
2. Tap on OK in order to initiate power dialling.

> **Note:** Avoid leaving the telephone once power dialling has been activated since whenever a number is dialed, the loudspeaker on the system telephone is automatically switched on.

Cancelling Power Dialling

Requirements:
– Power dialling has been initiated

If you would like to cancel power dialling in progress, proceed as described in the following.

- The telephone is now in the idle state: Tap on .
- The telephone is not in the idle state. It is currently attempting to reach the subscriber in question: Press the **Hook key**.

Switching Attention Tone for Power Dialling On/Off

If the attention tone for power dialling has been enabled, the attention tone signals that the subscriber being called with power dialling is no longer busy and the loudspeaker has been switched on. The volume of the attention tone is dependent on the configured ringer volume.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Attention Tone for Power Dialling On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Signalling/ringer**.
2. Select or clear the **Attention tone (power dialling)** check box.
   - ☑ Enables the attention tone for power dialling.
   - ☐ Disables the attention tone for power dialling.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Attention Tone for Power Dialling On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > signalling > attention tone**.

2. Select or clear the **power dialling** check box.

   Enables the attention tone for power dialling.

   Disables the attention tone for power dialling.

3. Tap on OK.

Room Monitoring

The room monitoring function can be used for monitoring a room acoustically, for instance, for monitoring a small child while she sleeps. The internal telephone in this room must be suitably configured for this purpose.

The configured telephone can then be called by another internal telephone or by a password-protected external telephone. The connection is established immediately and it is possible to listen into the room.

Initiating Room Monitoring

Requirements:

– Authorisation in the PBX for ***Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

To enable room monitoring, press a **function key** configured for room monitoring.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > room monitoring**.
2. Select **switch on**.

   The microphone of the hands-free component switches on automatically. If the telephone is then called from an internal telephone, the connection is immediately established and it is possible to listen into the room.

   Note: How to listen into a room from an external telephone is described in the Operation Instructions for the PBX.

Ending Room Monitoring

- Tap on OK or the **Hook key** or pick up the receiver and then hang it up again.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Room Monitoring

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to switch on room monitoring.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Red	The room monitoring function is enabled.
Off	The room monitoring function is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Room Monitoring

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Room monitoring** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Room Monitoring

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **room monitoring** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Relays

If the PBX is equipped with one or more relays, they can be switched on and off independently of the operating mode configured for each telephone.

Switching Relays On/Off

Important: Not available for operation on the PBX COMpact 3000 analogue/ ISDN/VoIP.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Switching of relay***
*– A relay configured in the PBX with relay mode **configuration dependent** or **PC relay***

In order to switch a relay on and off, press the function key configured for switching relays.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > relay**.
2. Select the desired relay based on its name/number.
3. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables the relay.

   switch off: Disables the relay.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Switching Relays On/Off

Important: Not available for operation on the PBX COMpact 3000 analogue/ ISDN/VoIP.

Press the key to switch to the configured relay on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the relay is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	The relay configured on the key is enabled.
Off	The relay configured on the key is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Switching Relays

Requirements:
*– A relay configured in the PBX with relay mode **configuration dependent** or **PC relay***

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Relay** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. Configure the settings dependent on the type of PBX.
   - Select a relay in the **Relays to be switched** list field.
   - Enter the identification number of the relay in question in the **identification number** field.
6. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Press the key to disable the relay.

   switch on: Press the key to enable the relay.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the relay on or off.

7. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Switching of relay***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Switching Relays

Requirements:
*– A relay configured in the PBX with relay mode **configuration dependent** or **PC relay***

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **relay** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on .
6. Select a relay based on its name.
7. Select the kind of switching. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Press the key to disable the relay.

switch on: Press the key to enable the relay.

switch over: Press the key to switch the relay on or off.

8. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Switching of relay***

Call Forwarding

Call forwarding allows calls to be forwarded. When this is done, a difference is made between calls to a specific telephone (call forwarding for subscribers), to groups (call forwarding for groups) and to connections (call forwarding for external telephone numbers).

Call Forwarding Variations

Auerswald PBXs support three different kinds of call forwarding:

Call Forwarding for Subscribers

> **Important:** Not available for operation on the PBX COMpact 3000 analogue/ ISDN/VoIP.

When call forwarding (CF) for subscribers is used, internal and external calls to a single telephone can be rerouted to other internal telephones or external connections. In this way, the subscriber in question or his replacement can take these calls on another telephone.

Call forwarding for subscribers makes sure that the subscriber in question or his replacement is always available at his own phone number, even if the subscriber cannot take a call on his own telephone.

> **Important:** Call forwarding for subscribers does not function for incoming group calls on your telephone. If you would like to prevent your telephone from ringing unanswered when calls to the group in which you belong come through, you need to log yourself out of the group or configure call forwarding for groups.
>
> **Note:** If you would like to configure call forwarding for subscribers on the destination telephone, use the follow me function.

Call Forwarding for Groups

> **Important:** Not available for operation on the PBX COMpact 3000 analogue/ ISDN/VoIP.

When call forwarding for groups is used, internal and external calls to a group can be rerouted to other internal telephones or external connections. In this way, a person that is not a member of this group and therefore cannot log in, can receive these calls.

Call forwarding for groups makes sure that someone is always available on the group telephone number, even if the calls cannot be taken by a member of the group.

To configure call forwarding for groups, refer to the Operation Instructions for the PBX.

Call Forwarding for External Numbers

When call forwarding for external numbers is used, calls made to an external phone number (dialled by an external caller) are rerouted to other external connections. In this way, these calls can be taken on another telephone, for example, on a mobile phone if no one can take the call internally.

Call forwarding for external numbers can be configured for the current configuration or for the permanent configuration.

Note: If you would like to also forward internal calls, use call forwarding for subscribers or for groups instead of call forwarding for external numbers. This also allows forwarding to internal telephones.

Kinds of Call Forwarding

As there can be many different reasons for not accepting a call, for example, the subscriber in question is not present or is on another line, three kinds of call forwarding are provided:

CF unconditional

The telephone being called does not ring. The call is forwarded immediately.

CF on busy

The call is forwarded immediately but only if the telephone being called is busy.

CF on no reply

The telephone being called rings for a certain amount of time. If the call is not accepted, it is forwarded.

Note:

A different destination can be configured for each of the three kinds of call forwarding.

If "CF on busy" and "CF on no reply" are enabled at the same time, both kinds apply. Depending on which case occurs – the telephone is busy or nobody answers it – the call is forwarded to their respective telephone numbers.

If "CF unconditional" is enabled in addition to the "CF on busy" and/or "CF on no reply," all of the calls are forwarded immediately. In this case, the other kinds of call forwarding are overridden, but remain enabled. As soon as "CF unconditional“ is disabled, the other kinds that are still enabled are again applicable.

Switching Call Forwarding for Subscribers On/Off

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

*– For external destination numbers: Authorisation assigned in the PBX for **Configuring CF (sub) to ext. number***

To enable or disable call forwarding for subscribers, press the **function key** configured for call forwarding (subscribers).

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > Call fwd.:scr**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   deactivate all: Disables all currently enabled call forwarding for subscribers. (No other action is required.)

   unconditional: Switches call forwarding unconditional for subscribers on or off.

   on busy: Switches call forwarding on busy for subscribers on or off.

   on no reply: Switches call forwarding on no reply for subscribers on or off.
3. Select one of the following options:

switch on: Enables call forwarding for subscribers.

switch off: Disables call forwarding for subscribers. (No other action is required.)

Note: If you press the **Telephone book key** before entering the destination number, you can select the desired phone number from the telephone book.

---

4. Enter the destination number. Possible entries:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, external telephone numbers always with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).

---

5. Tap on OK.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Forwarding for Subscribers

Press the key to enable, disable and switch call forwarding for subscribers over.

Exception: A key that is defined to disable call forwarding for subscribers only disables the currently enabled call forwarding for subscribers.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key (not applicable if defined with "deactivate all"):	
Red	Call forwarding for subscribers is enabled for the configured destination.
Yellow	Call forwarding for subscribers is enabled for another destination.
Off	Call forwarding for subscribers is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Call Forwarding Unconditional for Subscribers

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Subscriber CF unconditional** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Pressing the key disables call forwarding unconditional for subscribers.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables call forwarding unconditional for subscribers.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches call forwarding unconditional for subscribers over.
6. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the destination number. Possible entries:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Click to accept a telephone number from the telephone book in the **Telephone no** entry field.
7. In the **Type of telephone number** list field, select one of the following options:

   Internal no.: Defines the destination number entered as an internal telephone number.

   External no.: Defines the destination number entered as an external telephone number.
8. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***
*– For external destination numbers: Authorisation assigned in the PBX for **Configuring CF (sub) to ext. number***

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Call Forwarding on Busy for Subscribers

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Subscriber CF on busy** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Pressing the key disables call forwarding on busy for subscribers.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables call forwarding on busy for subscribers.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches call forwarding on busy for subscribers off.
6. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the destination number. Possible entries:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Click to accept a telephone number from the telephone book in the **Telephone no** entry field.

7. In the **Type of telephone number** list field, select one of the following options:

   Internal no.: Defines the destination number entered as an internal telephone number.

   External no.: Defines the destination number entered as an external telephone number.

8. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***
*– For external destination numbers: Authorisation assigned in the PBX for **Configuring CF (sub) to ext. number***

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Call Forwarding on No Reply for Subscribers

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.

2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Subscriber CF on no reply** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

switch off: Pressing the key disables call forwarding on no reply for subscribers.

switch on: Pressing the key enables call forwarding on no reply for subscribers.

switch over: Pressing the key switches call forwarding on no reply for subscribers.

6. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the destination number. Possible entries:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Click to accept a telephone number from the telephone book in the **Telephone no** entry field.

7. In the **Type of telephone number** list field, select one of the following options:

   Internal no.: Defines the destination number entered as an internal telephone number.

   External no.: Defines the destination number entered as an external telephone number.

8. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***
*– For external destination numbers: Authorisation assigned in the PBX for **Configuring CF (sub) to ext. number***

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Switching Call Forwarding for Subscribers Off

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Switch off all subscriber CF** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***
*– For external destination numbers: Authorisation assigned in the PBX for **Configuring CF (sub) to ext. number***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Call Forwarding for Subscribers

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **Call fwd.:scr** function.

5. Select one of the following options:

   deactivate all: Defines a key with the Switch off all function. (No other action is required.)

   unconditional: Defines a key with the call forwarding unconditional for subscribers function.

   on busy: Defines a key with the call forwarding on busy for subscribers function.

   on no reply: Defines a key with the call forwarding on no reply for subscribers function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

6. Select the kind of switching. Tapping on allows you to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Pressing the key disables call forwarding for subscribers. (No other action is required.)

   switch on: Pressing the key enables call forwarding for subscribers.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches call forwarding for subscribers over.

7. Tap on

.

Note: If you press the **Telephone book key** before entering the destination number, you can select the desired phone number from the telephone book.

---

8. Enter the destination number. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, external telephone numbers always with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).

---

9. Tap on
.

10. Enter a name. Possible entries:

    Up to 16 digits

    Digits and characters

11. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***
*– For external destination numbers: Authorisation assigned in the PBX for **Configuring CF (sub) to ext. number***

Switching Call Forwarding for External Numbers On/Off

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX. On the other PBXs this function can be set via programming sequence (see instructions for the PBX).

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
*– Authorisation assigned in the PBX for **Features to be configured by the network provider (CF, keypad)***

To enable or disable call forwarding for external numbers, press the **function key** configured for call forwarding (external numbers).

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > CF ext.no.**.

2. Select one of the following options:

   time control: Switches permanent configuration off and the current condition on.)

   deactivate all: Disables all currently enabled call forwarding for external numbers. The prerequisite is that function keys have been configured for these instances of call forwarding. (No other action is required.)

unconditional: Switches call forwarding unconditional for external numbers on or off.

on busy: Switches call forwarding on busy for external numbers on or off.

on no reply: Switches call forwarding on no reply for external numbers on or off.

3. Enter the external phone number to be forwarded on the PBX (without an exchange line access number and with a prefix). Possible entries:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

4. Tap on OK.

5. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables call forwarding for external numbers.

   For time control: Switches the current configuration on and the permanent configuration off. (No other action is required.)

   switch off: Disables call forwarding for external numbers. (No other action is required.)

   For time control: Switches the current configuration off and the permanent configuration on. (No other action is required.)

Note: If you press the **telephone book key** before entering the destination number, you can select the desired phone number from the telephone book.

---

6. Enter the destination number (with exchange line access number). Possible entries:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

7. Tap on OK.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Forwarding for External Numbers

---

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact

5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX. On the other PBXs this function can be set via programming sequence (see instructions for the PBX).

Pressing the key enables, disables and switches call forwarding for external numbers over.

Exception: A key defined to disable all instances of call forwarding for external numbers disables all enabled call forwarding for external numbers. The prerequisite is that function keys have been configured for these instances of call forwarding.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key (not applicable if defined with "deactivate all"):

Red	Call forwarding for external numbers is enabled in the central office/PBX for the configured destination and selected configuration.
Yellow	Call forwarding on busy or on no reply for external numbers has been configured, but it is overridden by an additional call forwarding unconditional for external numbers.
Yellow	Call forwarding for external numbers is enabled in the central office/PBX for another destination or configuration.
Off	Call forwarding for external numbers is disabled in the central office/PBX.

Important: When operating the function via the key, the success/failure of the operation is indicated by a change in colour on the LED. During the configuration in the central office (this takes perhaps from a few seconds up to a minute), the LED blinks yellow.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Configuring Function Key for Call Forwarding Unconditional for External Numbers

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **CF unconditional (MSN/DDI)** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Pressing the key disables call forwarding unconditional for external numbers.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables call forwarding unconditional for external numbers.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches call forwarding unconditional for external numbers over.

6. In the **Configuration** list field, select one of the following options:

   permanent configuration: Call forwarding unconditional for external numbers is enabled, disabled or switched over in the permanent configuration.

   current configuration: Call forwarding unconditional for external numbers is enabled, disabled or switched over only in the current configuration.

   Note: Call forwarding for the current configuration can only be enabled if call forwarding for the permanent configuration is disabled.

   ---

7. In the **Telephone no** entry field under **Your own exchange line**, enter the external phone number to be forwarded on the PBX (with a prefix). The following entries are possible:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

8. In the **Telephone no** entry field under **Destination of Call Forwarding**, enter the destination number (with exchange line access number). The following entries are possible:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Click to accept a telephone number from the telephone book in the **Telephone no** entry field.

9. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

Up to 16 digits

Digits and characters

Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation assigned in the PBX for **Features to be configured by the network provider (CF, keypad)***

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Call Forwarding on Busy for External Numbers

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Only available in installed extension modules: In the telephone displayed at the top left, click the key group in which you would like to define keys.
3. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
4. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
5. Select the **CF on busy (MSN/DDI)** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
6. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Pressing the key disables call forwarding on busy for external numbers.

switch on: Pressing the key enables call forwarding on busy for external numbers.

switch over: Pressing the key switches call forwarding on busy for external numbers over.

7. In the **Configuration** list field, select one of the following options:

   permanent configuration: Call forwarding on busy for external numbers is enabled, disabled or switched over in the permanent configuration.

   current configuration: Call forwarding on busy for external numbers is enabled, disabled or switched over only in the current configuration.

   Note: Call forwarding for the current configuration can only be enabled if call forwarding for the permanent configuration is disabled.

8. In the **Telephone no** entry field under **Your own exchange line**, enter the external phone number to be forwarded on the PBX (with a prefix). The following entries are possible:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

9. In the **Telephone no** entry field under **Destination of Call Forwarding**, enter the destination number (with exchange line access number). The following entries are possible:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Click to accept a telephone number from the telephone book in the **Telephone no** entry field.

10. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

    Up to 16 digits

    Digits and characters

    Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

    Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:

– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Authorisation assigned in the PBX for ***Features to be configured by the network provider (CF, keypad)***

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Call Forwarding on No Reply for External Numbers

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **CF on no reply (MSN/DDI)** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Pressing the key disables call forwarding on no reply for external numbers.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables call forwarding on no reply for external numbers.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches call forwarding on no reply for external numbers over.
6. In the **Configuration** list field, select one of the following options:

   permanent configuration: Call forwarding on no reply for external numbers is enabled, disabled or switched over in the permanent configuration.

   current configuration: Call forwarding on no reply for external numbers is enabled, disabled or switched over only in the current configuration.

Note: Call forwarding for the current configuration can only be enabled if call forwarding for the permanent configuration is disabled.

---

7. In the **Telephone no** entry field under **Your own exchange line**, enter the external phone number to be forwarded on the PBX (with a prefix). The following entries are possible:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

8. In the **Telephone no** entry field under **Destination of Call Forwarding**, enter the destination number (with exchange line access number). The following entries are possible:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Click to accept a telephone number from the telephone book in the **Telephone no** entry field.

9. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation assigned in the PBX for **Features to be configured by the network provider (CF, keypad)***

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Switching Call Forwarding for External Numbers Off

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.

2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Switch off all CF (MSN/DDI)** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation assigned in the PBX for **Features to be configured by the network provider (CF, keypad)***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Call Forwarding for External Numbers

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **CF ext.no.** function.
5. Select one of the following options:

deactivate all: Defines a key with the Switch off all function. (No other action is required.)

unconditional: Defines a key with the call forwarding unconditional for external numbers function.

on busy: Defines a key with the call forwarding on busy for external numbers function.

on no reply: Defines a key with the call forwarding on no reply for external numbers function.

The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

6. Select the kind of switching. Tapping on allows you to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Pressing the key disables call forwarding for external numbers.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables call forwarding for external numbers.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches call forwarding for external numbers over.

7. Select the configuration. Tapping on allows you to switch over between the current and the permanent configuration.

   current config.: Call forwarding for external numbers is enabled, disabled or switched over only in the current configuration.

   permanent config: Call forwarding for external numbers is enabled, disabled or switched over in the permanent configuration.

Note: Call forwarding for the current configuration can only be enabled if call forwarding for the permanent configuration is disabled.

---

8. Tap on

.

Note: If you press the **telephone book key** before entering the destination number, you can select the desired phone number from the telephone book.

---

9. Enter the destination number (with exchange line access number). Possible entries:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

10. Tap on
.

11. Enter a name. Possible entries:

Up to 16 digits

Digits and characters

12. Tap on MSM DDI.

13. Enter the external phone number to be forwarded on the PBX (without an exchange line access number and with a prefix). Possible entries:

    Up to 24 digits

    Digits and the characters * and #

14. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Authorisation assigned in the PBX for ***Features to be configured by the network provider (CF, keypad)***

Call Restrictor (Incoming) – Robinson Numbers

If there are certain persons who you absolutely do not want to call you, their external phone numbers (Robinson numbers) can be assigned to a call restrictor for incoming calls in the PBX. The call restrictor which applies to all subscribers can be enabled on your own telephone as needed. If the call restrictor is enabled, a caller, who transmitted one of the Robinson numbers, is rejected.

Switching the Call Restrictor (Incoming) On/Off

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– A call restrictor configured on the PBX and assigned to the subscriber
– Authorisation in the PBX for ***Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

In order to activate or deactivate the call restrictor, press the **function key** configured for the call restrictor (incoming).

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > Call Restrictor**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables the call restrictor.

   switch off: Disables the call restrictor.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Restrictor (Incoming)

Press the key to switch the subscriber's call restrictor on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:

Red	The call restrictor is enabled.
Off	The call restrictor is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Call Restrictor (Incoming)

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Call restrictor - incoming (Robinson no.)** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Pressing the key enables the call restrictor.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables the call restrictor.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches the call restrictor on or off.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:

– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– A call restrictor configured on the PBX and assigned to the subscriber
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Call Restrictor (Incoming)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **Call Restrictor** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of switching. Tapping on allows you to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Pressing the key enables the call restrictor.

   switch on: Pressing the key enables the call restrictor.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches the call restrictor on or off.
6. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– A call restrictor configured on the PBX and assigned to the subscriber
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Controlling of the PBX using the telephone***

Power Save Mode

In power save mode, the display lighting and the LEDs are inactive (exception: the message LED blinks for missed calls).

After a configurable waiting time and depending on the configuration, power save mode can be activated automatically during the switchover into a PBX configuration and/or manually by pressing a key. Power save mode is deactivated again as soon as an incoming call is signalled or any key is pressed.

Switching Automatic Activation of Power Save Mode On/Off

If automatic activation of power save mode is enabled, the telephone automatically switches into power save mode when the telephone is not in use.

The holding time indicates how much time after the key was last pressed before power save mode is activated.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Automated Activation of Power Save Mode On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Power save mode**.
2. Select or clear the **Automated activation** check box.
   - ☑ Enables the automated activation of power save mode.
   - ☐ Disables the automated activation of power save mode.
3. Enter a value in the corresponding **Waiting time (1 to 999 minutes)** entry field. The following entries are possible:

   1 to **999**: After 1 to 999 minutes, power save mode is automatically activated, depending on the entry.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Automatic Activation of Power Save Mode On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > power save mode > autom.activation**.
2. Select or clear the **autom.activation** check box.

   Enables the automated activation of power save mode.

   Disables the automated activation of power save mode.
3. Open the menu **settings > power save mode > idle time**.
4. Enter a value. Possible entries:

   1 to **999**: After 1 to 999 minutes, power save mode is automatically activated, depending on the entry.
5. Tap on OK.

Switching Power Save Mode Activation On/Off Depending on Configuration

If configuration-dependent power save mode activation is enabled, the telephone goes into power save mode during a switchover into a specific PBX configuration (for example, a night configuration).

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Configuration-dependent Activation of Power Save Mode On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Power save mode**.
2. Make the necessary changes depending on the type of PBX.
   - In the **Configuration** entry field, select a configuration in order to enable the configuration-dependent activation of power save mode.
   - In the **Configuration (10 to 9999)** entry field, enter the identification number of a configuration in order to enable the configuration-dependent activation of power save mode.

Note: To disable the configuration-dependent activation of power save mode, you need to select **---** in the list field or delete the identification number of the configuration from the entry field.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Configuration-dependent Activation of Power Save Mode On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > power save mode > configuration**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch off: Disables configuration-dependent activation. (No other action is required.)

   switch on: Enables configuration-dependent activation.
3. Select a configuration from the list.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Manually Activating Power Save Mode

Pressing the key while in the telephone's idle state switches it immediately into power save mode.

LED signalling on the key:

None

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Manually Activating Power Save Mode

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Power save mode** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Manually Activating Power Save Mode

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **power save mode** function.

The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Tap on OK.

Switching the Power Save Mode Link to Phone Lock On/Off

If the power save mode link to the phone lock is enabled, the phone lock is enabled as soon as the telephone changes to power save mode.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Power Save Mode Link to Phone Lock On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Power save mode**.
2. Select or clear the **Link to telephone lock** check box.
   - ☑ Enables the power save mode link to the phone lock.
   - ☐ Disables the power save mode link to the phone lock.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Power Save Mode Link to Phone Lock On/Off

Requirements:
– Configured user, subadmin or admin PIN
– Knowledge of the user, subadmin or admin PIN

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > power save mode > phone lock**.
2. Select or clear the **phone lock** check box.
   - Enables the power save mode link to the phone lock.
   - Disables the power save mode link to the phone lock.

3. Tap on OK.

Phone Lock

The phone lock can be used to block the telephone from unauthorised use. Even after enabling the phone lock, it is possible to receive incoming calls and to make emergency calls (manual dialling of emergency numbers entered in the PBX only).

Enabling the Phone Lock

Requirements:
– Configured user or subadmin PIN

- Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > phone lock**.

  Or, press the **function key** configured for the phone lock.

Disabling the Phone Lock

The disabling procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– Knowledge of the user, subadmin or admin PIN

1. Tap on .

   Or, press the **function key** configured for the phone lock.

2. Enter the user, subadmin or admin PIN.
3. Tap on OK.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Phone Lock

Press the key on the telephone in the idle state to enable the phone lock.

Press the key again and then enter the user PIN, admin PIN or subadmin PIN to disable the phone lock again.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Red	The phone lock is enabled.
Off	The phone lock is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Phone Lock

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Phone lock** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:

– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Configured user, subadmin or admin PIN
– For enabling the function: Knowledge of the user or subadmin PIN
– For disabling the function: Knowledge of the user, subadmin or admin PIN

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Phone Lock

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **phone lock** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Configured user, subadmin or admin PIN
– For enabling the function: Knowledge of the user or subadmin PIN
– For disabling the function: Knowledge of the user, subadmin or admin PIN

Scheduled Call

The scheduled call provides the option of being reminded of a schedule or to place a specific call by the system telephone. The telephone can be configured with up to 16 schedules. The configured schedules are saved in a scheduled call list in the order they are to be processed.

Opening Scheduled Call List

Opening can be carried out as follows:

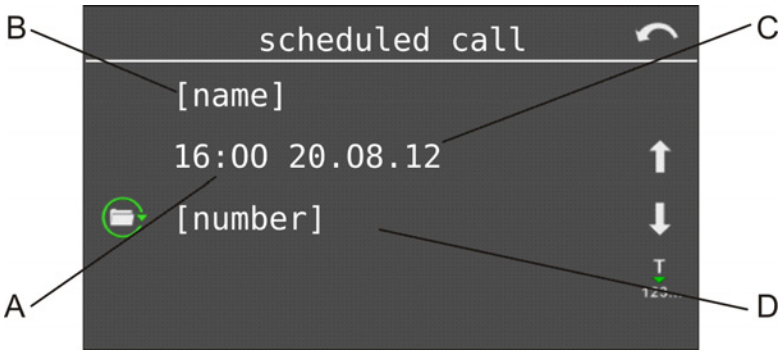
- Using the telephone

1. Tap on →2 and select **schedule**.

   Or, press the **function key** configured for a scheduled call or press the **menu key** to open the menu **functions > scheduled call**.

2. Scroll to the desired schedule.

   The following information about schedule is shown on the display:



   A Time of the schedule

   B Name of the person to be called or information about the schedule

   C Date of the schedule

   D Phone number of the person to be called

3. Select one of the following options:

   This switches you back to the second level.

This initiates either the deletion or editing of the schedule.

This accepts entries into dial preparation.

Note: As soon as a phone number is accepted into dial preparation, this schedule is considered completed and is deleted from the scheduled call list.

Configuring Scheduled Call as Schedule Reminder

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

In order to configure a scheduled call that is meant to remind you of a schedule, select the **reschedule call** function during a call.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Open the scheduled call list.
2. Tap on in front of **new entry**.
3. Enter the time and date.
4. Tap on OK.
5. Select **just a reminder**.
6. Enter some information. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters
7. Tap on OK.

Configuring Scheduled Call as Call Reminder

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

In order to configure a scheduled call that is meant to remind you to make a specific call, select the **reschedule call** function during a call.

If the telephone number is on the caller list, for example, transfer the phone number into dial preparation, and then tap on .

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Open the scheduled call list.
2. Tap on in front of **new entry**.
3. Enter the time and date.
4. Tap on OK.
5. Select **with dial prep.**.

Note:

If you carry out configuration during a call, the phone number of your communication partner is now display – if it is known.

If you press the **Telephone book key** before entering the phone number, you can select the desired phone number from the telephone book.

---

6. Enter the telephone number that you would like to call later. Possible entries:

   Up to 40 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, external telephone numbers always with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).

---

7. Enter the corresponding name or information. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

8. Tap on OK.

Accepting Scheduled Call as Schedule Reminder

The accepting procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

If a schedule call causes your telephone to ring to remind you of a schedule, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select one of the following options:

   confirm: Confirms the scheduled call.

   reschedule: Reschedules the scheduled call for 10 minutes later.

   reschedule call: Allows you to reschedule the scheduled call using the options of 30 minutes, 1 hour, 2 hours, 1 day, 1 week, 2 weeks, 4 weeks or a user-defined option.

2. Tap on OK to accept the selection.

Note: If you are not present when the scheduled call occurs, it is automatically rescheduled. As soon as the telephone is operated again afterwards, the scheduled call occurs again 1 minute after returning to the idle state.

Accepting Scheduled Call as Call Reminder

The accepting procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

If your telephone rings due to a scheduled call for a call reminder, pick up the receiver to accept the call. The phone number saved is dialled immediately.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Select one of the following options:

   dial preparation: Enters the phone number saved into dial preparation.

   delete: Deletes the scheduled call.

reschedule: Reschedules the scheduled call 10 minutes later.

reschedule call: Allows you to reschedule the scheduled call using the options of 30 minutes, 1 hour, 2 hours, 1 day, 1 week, 2 weeks, 4 weeks or a user-defined option.

2. Tap on OK to accept the selection.

Note: If you are not present when the scheduled call occurs, it is automatically rescheduled. As soon as the telephone is operated again afterwards, the scheduled call occurs again 1 minute after returning to the idle state.

Editing Existing Scheduled Calls in Scheduled Call List

Editing can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Open the scheduled call list.
2. Scroll to the desired schedule.
3. Tap on .
4. Select **change**.
5. Make the desired changes.

Deleting Existing Scheduled Calls from Scheduled Call List

Deleting can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Open the scheduled call list.
2. Scroll to the desired schedule.
3. Tap on .

4. Select **delete**.
5. Tap on OK to confirm the action.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Scheduled Calls

Press the key while the telephone is the idle state to open the **scheduled call** menu. This allows you to configure a new scheduled call or to open the scheduled call list.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Red (blinking)	A scheduled call is signalled.
Red	The scheduled call was not accepted/confirmed.
Green	One or more scheduled calls are configured.
Off	No scheduled call is configured.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Scheduled Calls

1. Open the page **Function keys** > **Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Scheduled call** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

Up to 16 digits

Digits and characters

Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Scheduled Calls

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **scheduled call** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on OK.

Text before Answering

The text before answering function enables the caller to be greeted with an automatic announcement before accepting the call (charges apply for the external caller).

Variants for Text before Answering

Text before answering for group

> **Important:** Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Switching the text before answering function on is done separately for each group.

There are two types possible:

- Text before answering on busy

  The caller hears the announcement for text before answering only if all of the group members are busy. After this, the caller is automatically connected to the corresponding queue.
- Text before answering always

  The caller hears the announcement independent of whether the group members are being called or are busy. If all of the group members are busy, the caller is automatically connected to the corresponding queue.

Text before answering for external telephone number

> **Important:** Only available for operation on the PBX COMpact 4410 USB.

Switching the text before answering function on is done separately for each external telephone number.

Switching Text before Answering for Group On/Off

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Requirements:

– Function key configured for the text before answering function

– The text before answering announcement on the PBX assigned to the group

- Press the **function key** configured for the text before answering function.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Text before Answering for Group

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Press the key while the telephone is the idle state to switch text before answering for the configured group on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	The text before answering function for the configured group is enabled.
Off	The text before answering function for the configured group is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Text before Answering for Group

Requirements:

– The telephone is a member of a group configured in the PBX

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Text before answering** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the phone number of the group.
6. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Press the key to disable text before answering.

   switch on (on busy): Press the key to enable text before answering on busy.

   switch on (always): Press the key to enable text before answering.

   switch over (on busy): Press the key to switch text before answering on busy on or off.

   switch over (always): Press the key to switch text before answering on or off.
7. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– The text before answering announcement on the PBX and assigned to the group

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Text before Answering for Group

Requirements:

– The telephone is a member of a group configured in the PBX

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **text before answering** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on 049...?.
6. Select a group based on its name/number.
7. Tap on .
8. Enter a name for the group. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters
9. Select the kind of switching. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   deactivate: Press the key to disable text before answering.

   sw.on (on busy): Press the key to enable text before answering on busy.

   sw.on (always) Press the key to enable text before answering.

   sw.on (on busy): Press the key to switch text before answering on busy on or off.

   sw.on (always) Press the key to switch text before answering on or off.
10. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– The text before answering announcement on the PBX and assigned to the group

Switching Text before Answering for External Telephone Number On/Off

Important: This function is only available for operation on the PBX COMpact 4410 USB.

Requirements:

– Function key configured for the text before answering function

– Text before answering announcement saved on the PBX

- Press the **function key** configured for the text before answering function.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Text before Answering for External Telephone Number

Important: This function is only available for operation on the PBX COMpact 4410 USB.

Press the key while the telephone is the idle state to switch text before answering for the configured telephone number on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	The text before answering function for the configured telephone number is enabled.
Off	The text before answering function for the configured telephone number is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone menu

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Text before Answering for External Telephone Number

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Text before answering** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Telephone no (your own exchange line)** entry field, enter the external telephone number on the PBX.

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #
6. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Press the key to disable text before answering.

   switch on: Press the key to enable text before answering.

   switch over: Press the key to switch text before answering on or off.
7. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Text before answering announcement saved on the PBX

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Text before Answering for External Telephone Number

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **text bef. answer** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on 049...?.
6. Select the external telephone number on the PBX.
7. Tap on .
8. Enter a name for the group. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters
9. Select the kind of switching. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Press the key to disable text before answering.

   switch on: Press the key to enable text before answering.

   switch over: Press the key to switch text before answering on or off.
10. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– Text before answering announcement saved on the PBX

Door Functions

A door terminal connected with the interface of the PBX enables the following functions. Calls to the door can be made from any telephone (intercom). During a call to the door, the door can be opened (open door) and a stairwell light controlled by switching a relay (switch on light).

These functions can be executed on the system telephone without initiating a door call.

Executing Door Functions

Important: Not available for operation on the PBX COMpact 3000 analogue/ ISDN/VoIP.

The execution can be made as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– The authority level assigned in the PBX for the door terminal
– The relays configured in the PBX for the intercom, opening the door and the stairwell light
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Open door***

In order to operate the door functions, press the **function key** configured for door functions.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > door function**.
2. Select the desired door based on its name/number.
3. Select one of the following options:

   open door/light: Opens the door and switches the stairwell light on.

   open door: Opens the door.

   light on: Switches the stairwell light on.

   talk: Establishes a call connection to the door.

Note: The door function **light on** switches on the relay of the door terminal in question separately for the period configured in the PBX.

Own Telephone Rings (Door Call) – Accept Call and Open Door

The accepting/opening procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– The authority level assigned in the PBX for the door terminal
– The relays configured in the PBX for the intercom, opening the door and the stairwell light
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Open door***

Proceed as described further down if you receive a door call.

1. Pick up the receiver or press the **Hook key**.
2. Select **open door/light**.

   The door is opened. If the relay of the door terminal in question is used for switching the stairwell light, this is also switched on for the period configured in the PBX.

The door knocks – open the door without accepting the call

During a call, you can handle an incoming door call generally as you would an incoming external subscriber. This means that you can accept the call, reject it or ignore it. In addition, you can, if you do not want to interrupt your current call, still open the door for the visitor by pressing the door opener.

Opening can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– The authority level assigned in the PBX for the door terminal
– The relays configured in the PBX for the intercom, opening the door and the stairwell light
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Open door***

Proceed as described when a door calls.

- Select **open door/light**.

  The door is opened. If the relay of the door terminal in question is used for switching the stairwell light, this is also switched on for the period configured in the PBX.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Door Functions

Important: Not available for operation on the PBX COMpact 3000 analogue/ ISDN/VoIP.

Press the key for general functions while the telephone is in the idle state to open the door function menu. After this, you can initiate a door function for the configured door.

Press the key defined to initiate a call connection with the door (after picking up the receiver) or to switch on the door opener and/or light.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key (only for defined key assignment):

Green	The door opener function is enabled.
	The door opener function is enabled and the light is switched on (only when both functions are configured on the key).
Red	A call connection has been established with the door.
Yellow	The light is switched on.
Off	None of the functions configured on the key are enabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Door Terminal Functions

Requirements:

– The authority level assigned in the PBX for the door terminal

– The relays configured in the PBX for the intercom, opening the door and the stairwell light

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Door terminal function** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the telephone number of the door.

6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Open door***

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Defined Door Terminal Functions

Requirements:
– The authority level assigned in the PBX for the door terminal
– The relays configured in the PBX for the intercom, opening the door and the stairwell light

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.

2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Defined door function** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the telephone number of the door.
6. In the **Door terminal function** list field, select one of the following options:

   Open the door & switch on the light: Press the key to switch the door opener and the light on.

   Open the door: Press the key to switch the door opener on.

   Light on: Press the key to switch the light on.

   Talking: Press the key to initiate a call connection to the door.

   Note: The door terminal function **Light on** switches on the relay of the door terminal in question separately at the time configured in the PBX.

7. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Open door***

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Door Function

Requirements:
– The authority level assigned in the PBX for the door terminal
– The relays configured in the PBX for the intercom, opening the door and the stairwell light

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **door function** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Select the kind of key. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of keys.

   general: Press the key to open the **door function** menu for the door configured.

   defined: Press the key to execute the configured door function for the configured door.

6. Tap on .

7. Select a door based on its name/number.

8. Tap on .

9. Enter a new name for the door. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

10. Only when the kind of key **defined** has been selected: Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of door functions.

    open door/light: Press the key to switch the door opener and the light on.

    open door: Press the key to switch the door opener on.

    light on: Press the key to switch the light on.

    talk: Press the key to initiate a call connection to the door.

    Note: The door terminal function **Light on** switches on the relay of the door terminal in question separately at the time configured in the PBX.

    ---

11. Tap on .

Requirements for operating the function:
*– Authorisation in the PBX for **Open door***

Waiting Field Function

In a waiting field, callers can be parked either automatically or by pressing the key, and then individually retrieved and forwarded.

Configuring a Waiting Field

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 4410 USB, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

The waiting field is configured as described in the following:

- Use the configuration manager in the PBX to configure automatic call acceptance for the waiting field.

  Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

- Using the configuration manager or the configuration software on the PBX, select a system telephone as the waiting field reception.

  Note:

  For operation on the PBXs COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX, a group must be configured and selected as the waiting field reception in order to operate the waiting field with multiple waiting field receptions. The maximum number of waiting field receptions is limited by the number of possible group members.

  For operation on the PBX COMpact 4410 USB, a max. of 1 waiting field reception is possible.

  If multiple system telephones have been configured and enabled as waiting field receptions, multiple employees can operate the waiting field simultaneously. Incoming calls and waiting callers are then signalled in all the waiting field receptions. However, if someone is talking to a caller in one of the waiting field receptions, this caller is not signalled in the other waiting field receptions.

- On each waiting field reception telephone, assign one or more external waiting field keys, which can be used to monitor and process exchange line calls.

  Note:

  For operation on the PBX COMpact 4410 USB, each waiting field key is assigned to an S_0 port.

  For operation on the PBXs COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX, each waiting field key is assigned to a bundle. A bundle can be either an S_0 port, multiple bundled S_0 ports, an S_{2M} port or a VoIP account. After selecting the bundle, the keys are assigned dynamically. This offers the option of configuring only one key for an S_0 port and only so many keys for an S_{2M} port that can be processed at a time. If calls come in over a bundle, they are displayed on the associated available keys. If more multiple calls come in over a bundle than there are keys available, they are not displayed until a key becomes available.

  The number of possible waiting field keys depends on the number of existing external lines/B-channels and therefore the maximum possible number of simultaneous callers (see instructions for the PBX).

- Assign an internal waiting field key to each waiting field reception, with which internal calls (also alarm calls and door calls) are monitored and processed.

  Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX. For operation on the PBX COMpact 4410 USB, internal calls, alarm calls and door terminal calls to the waiting field reception telephone are only possible if there are no external callers in the waiting field.

- After configuring a waiting field key on a system telephone, the waiting field reception function on the system telephone in question is automatically enabled and can be switched on and off, if necessary.

Sequence for Call Acceptance in Waiting Field

Call acceptance in the waiting field is carried out as follows:

- If all of the waiting field receptions have been switched off, the telephones ring according to normal call distribution.

- After switching on one or more waiting field receptions, the calls in the respective waiting field are signalled on the waiting field keys of the enabled waiting field receptions.

Important:

After switching on the waiting field reception, any call forwarding for subscribers configured for the telephone, parallel calls as well as the do-not-disturb function are switched off. Not until the waiting field reception is switched off (on the telephone) will these functions (for example, call forwarding on an answering machine) become available again. The function in question (except parallel calling) must be switched on again.

For existing calls, incoming exchange line calls are signalled by blinking LEDs and also by an attention tone, if enabled. For multiple active waiting field receptions, a caller placed in the waiting field is also signalled in the other waiting field receptions by the attention tone.

- The caller can be accepted normally by picking up the receiver or placed in the waiting field by pressing the associated waiting field key. If the automatic call acceptance is set to on busy or according to a time, callers are also automatically placed in the waiting field.
- A caller who has been placed in the waiting field, hears hold music. If a group is configured as waiting field reception and text before answering is enabled, the caller hears the text before answering announcement first.
- A caller is kept a max. of 16 minutes without interruption in the waiting field. If the waiting time is not interrupted by a call to the waiting caller or the call is forwarded, the connection is disconnected.
- You are reminded that the subscriber is still waiting by a short tone once per minute.
- Press the corresponding waiting field key to initiate a call with a caller in the waiting field.
- An external caller in the waiting field can be rerouted internally as normal. If the line of the person being called is busy, the external subscriber can be placed in that person's queue. If the person being called does not accept the call, the external caller is put back in the waiting field. This is signalled by an attention tone, if enabled.
- If there is no one in the waiting field, you can make calls as normal and use the keys on the telephone without limitations.
- As long as information about a call in the queue is showing on the display (LED lights up in yellow), several of the keys are without function and as soon as you picked up the receiver, you are connected to the call in the queue. You can prevent this by pressing the **Home** key. After this, the LED lights up in red and the display is in the idle state. Now you can make a call as normal, for instance, by selecting a phone number from the telephone book.

Switching Waiting Field Reception On/Off

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 4410 USB, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– The telephone has been selected in the PBX as a waiting field reception

In order to switch the waiting field reception on or off, press the **function key** configured for the waiting field reception.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > w.fld.reception**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables the waiting field reception.

   switch off: Disables the waiting field reception.

Important:

It is only possible to switch a waiting field reception off if no callers are in the waiting field. For multiple waiting field receptions, this limitation only applies when only one waiting field reception is switched on.

For operation on the PBXs COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX: When the waiting field reception is switched off, the subscriber is automatically logged out of the waiting field group incoming; the subscriber is automatically logged on again when the waiting field reception is switched on again.

For operation on the PBX COMpact 4410 USB: When the waiting field reception is enabled, the subscriber is automatically logged out of all groups. After disabling it, the participant must be logged in again, if desired.

Configuring and Operating Function Key and External Waiting Field

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 4410 USB, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Press the key to place the caller signalled by the key in the waiting field or establish a connection with the caller from the waiting field. Whether you press the key depends on the current status as displayed by the LED on the key. Refer to the description of LED signalling.

LED signalling on the key:

Green	No connection with an external subscriber exists. Information about the communication partner is shown on the display: (If other waiting field receptions have been enabled, the communication partners for these are not signalled.) Press the key once to place the communication partner in the waiting field.
Yellow	An external subscriber is on hold in the waiting field. Information about the calls waiting are shown on the display: (If other waiting field receptions have been enabled, the LED lights up in red.) Press the key once to establish a connection to the call waiting.
Red	An external subscriber is on hold in the waiting field. Press the key once to display information about the call waiting – if no call is in progress.
Yellow (blinking)	An external subscriber is calling. Information about the caller is shown on the display: Press the key once to place the caller in the waiting field. Press the key twice to establish a connection to the caller.
Red (blinking)	An external subscriber is calling. Press the key once to place the caller in the waiting field.

Note: If a caller is placed in the waiting field by pressing the waiting field key, the LED then lights up in yellow next to the key. If a caller is placed in the waiting field either automatically or by another waiting field reception, the LED then lights up in red.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for External Waiting Field

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click the **Level 1** tab.

   Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level. The second level is then blocked. If a function has been assigned to the second level, it is deleted.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Waiting field (external)** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. Make the necessary changes depending on the type of PBX.
   - In the **B channel** list field, select the S_0 port with the corresponding B channel, whose incoming calls are to be monitored.
   - In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the telephone number for the bundle whose incoming calls should be monitored. Possible entries:

     Up to 24 digits

   Note: A bundle can be either an S_0 port, multiple bundled S_0ports, an S_{2M} port or a VoIP account.

6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– The telephone has been selected in the PBX as a waiting field reception

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for External Waiting Field

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select **first level**.

   Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level. The second level is then blocked. If a function has been assigned to the second level, it is deleted.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **waiting field** function and then – depending of the type of PBX – select **external**.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on 049...?.
6. Make the necessary changes depending on the type of PBX.
   - Select the S_0 port and then the B channel, whose incoming calls are to be monitored.
   - Select the bundle, whose incoming calls should be monitored.

   Note: A bundle can be either an S_0 port, multiple bundled S_0ports, an S_{2M} port or a VoIP account.
7. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– The telephone has been selected in the PBX as a waiting field reception

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Internal Waiting Field

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Note: A maximum of one internal waiting field key is possible on a single telephone.

Press the key to place the internal caller in the waiting field or establish a connection with the caller from the waiting field. Whether you press the key depends on the current status as displayed by the LED on the key. Refer to the description of LED signalling.

LED signalling on the key:

Green	There is currently a connection with an internal subscriber. Information about the communication partner is shown on the display: (If other waiting field receptions have been enabled, the communication partners for these are not signalled.) Press the key once to place the communication partner in the waiting field.
Yellow	An internal subscriber is on hold in the waiting field. Information about the calls waiting are shown on the display: (If other waiting field receptions have been enabled, the calls waiting in these are not signalled.) Press the key once to establish a connection to the call waiting.
Red	An internal subscriber is on hold in the waiting field. (If other waiting field receptions have been enabled, the calls waiting in these are not signalled.) Press the key once to display information about the call waiting – if no call is in progress.
Yellow (blinking)	An internal subscriber is calling. Information about the caller is shown on the display: Press the key once to place the caller in the waiting field. Press the key twice to establish a connection to the caller.
Red (blinking)	An internal subscriber is calling. Press the key once to place the caller in the waiting field.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Internal Waiting Field

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click the **Level 1** tab.

   Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level. The second level is then blocked. If a function has been assigned to the second level, it is deleted.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Waiting field (internal)** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– The telephone has been selected in the PBX as a waiting field reception

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Internal Waiting Field

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select **first level**.

Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level. The second level is then blocked. If a function has been assigned to the second level, it is deleted.

The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **waiting field** function and then **internal**.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– The telephone has been selected in the PBX as a waiting field reception

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Switching Waiting Field Reception On/Off

Important: Not available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5010 VoIP and COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP.

Press the key while in the telephone's idle state to switch the waiting field reception on or off or switch it over.

In addition, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	The waiting field reception is enabled.
Off	The waiting field reception is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Switching Waiting Field Reception On/Off

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click the **Level 1** tab.

   Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Waiting field reception** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Disables the waiting field reception.

   switch on: Enables the waiting field reception.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the waiting field reception function on or off.

6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Requirements for operating the function:
– The telephone has been selected in the PBX as a waiting field reception

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Switching Waiting Field Reception On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select **first level**.

   Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **w.fld.reception** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of switching. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Disables the waiting field reception.

   switch on: Enables the waiting field reception.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the waiting field reception function on or off.
6. Tap on OK.

Requirements for operating the function:
– The telephone has been selected in the PBX as a waiting field reception

Switching Attention Tone for Waiting Field On/Off

If the attention tone has been switched on for the waiting field, incoming calls in the waiting field are signalled by an attention tone. If the attention tone bothers you, you can switch it off. The volume of the attention tone is dependent on the configured ringer volume.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Attention Tone for Waiting Field On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Signalling/ringer**.
2. Select or clear the **Attention tone (waiting field)** check box.
   - ☑ Enables the attention tone for the waiting field.
   - ☐ Disables the attention tone for the waiting field.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Attention Tone for Waiting Field On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > signalling > attention tone**.
2. Select or clear the **waiting field** check box.
   - Enables the attention tone for the waiting field.
   - Disables the attention tone for the waiting field.
3. Tap on .

Speed Dialling

The speed dialling function enables a function key to be defined with not only internal and external phone numbers but also with programming codes on the PBX. The saved codes can be easily dialled by pressing a key, if necessary.

Application Options for Speed Dialling Keys

Speed dialling keys can be used in the following ways:

Dialling a phone number

Pressing a speed dialling key immediately dials a saved phone number. If the receiver is on hook, the saved phone number is first transmitted into dial preparation.

If a speed dialling key is pressed during a call, a query call is placed and the saved phone number is dialled immediately.

Dialling part of a phone number

The telephone speed dialling keys to be defined with parts of phone numbers (for example, telephone provider prefixes). The phone number parts can then be assembled by pressing multiple speed dialling keys in an order. The names assigned to the phone numbers are shown one after the other on the display.

Assignment overview

Speed dialling keys defined with to internal subscriber and group phone numbers enable an overview of the current activity status of the subscriber or group via the corresponding LEDs.

Pickup and call take-over

Speed dialling keys defined with internal subscriber and group phone numbers enable the pickup function for these subscribers and groups. If the LED on the key is blinking in red because the saved phone number is being called, you can take the call on your telephone by pressing the speed dialling key and then confirming.

If a subscriber allows call take-over (for example, on an answering machine), you can still take the call on your telephone in the same manner even after it has already been accepted.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Speed Dialling

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to transfer a telephone number saved in a key to dial preparation – also additional information.

Exception: If the telephone number saved is an internal phone number and is currently being called, you can carry out the Pickup function on this call.

After picking up the receiver, press the key to dial the telephone number saved in the key.

Press the key during a call to put the active communication partner on hold and to dial the phone number saved in the key.

In addition, when a subscriber or a group telephone number is defined at the first key level, the status of the subscriber or group can be read from the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key (when defined with an internal subscriber telephone number):

Red (blinking)	The internal telephone is now being called. Press the key to initiate a pickup.
Red	The internal telephone is not reachable (a call is in progress on the telephone or all of the corresponding voice channels are in use). Press the key to initiate a call take-over, if required.
Green (blinking)	A call is being made from the internal telephone and the call was not accepted.
Yellow	The internal telephone is not reachable (do-not-disturb or call forwarding for subscribers has been configured).
Yellow (blinking)	Only for internal VoIP subscriber and enabled display of the registration status: The telephone is not registered on the PBX.
Off	The internal telephone is available. Press the key to place a call.

LED signalling on the key (when defined with an internal group phone number):

Red (blinking)	A logged-in telephone is now being called. Press the key to initiate a pickup.
Red	Calls are in progress on all logged-in telephones or no telephone in the group is logged in.
Yellow	The group is not available (call forwarding is configured for the group).
Off	The group is available. Press the key to place a call.

LED signalling on the key (when defined with an external telephone number):

Green (blinking)	A call is being made from the telephone of the external subscriber and the call was not accepted (in as far as the external telephone number is transmitted).

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Speed Dialling

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Speed dialling** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Telephone no** entry field, enter the destination number. Possible entries:

   Up to 40 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Click to accept a telephone number from the telephone book in the **Telephone no** entry field.
6. In the **Type of telephone number** list field, select one of the following options:

   Internal no.: Defines the destination number entered as an internal telephone number.

   External no.: Defines the destination number entered as an external telephone number.
7. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label and for display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Speed Dialling

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **speed dialling** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Tap on

.

   Note: If you press the **telephone book key** before entering the destination number, you can select the desired phone number from the telephone book.
6. Enter the destination number. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 40 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, external telephone numbers always with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).
7. Tap on
.
8. Enter a name. Possible entries:

Up to 16 digits

Digits and characters

9. Tap on OK.

Switching Automatic Speed Dialling Pick-up On/Off

If automatic speed dialling pick-up is enabled, pressing a speed dialling key while the telephone is in the idle state automatically picks up a call (when using a headset) or switches the telephone to hands-free calling.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Automatic Speed Dialling Pick-up On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > User settings**.
2. Select or clear the **Automatic off-hook for speed dialling** check box.
   - ☑ Enables automatic speed dialling pick-up.
   - ☐ Disables automatic speed dialling pick-up.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Automatic Speed Dialling Pick-up On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > user settings > speed dial.key**.
2. Select or clear the **auto. off hook** check box.
   - Enables automatic speed dialling pick-up.
   - Disables automatic speed dialling pick-up.
3. Tap on OK.

Switching the Display of the Registration Status On/Off

If the display of the registration status is switched on, the individual registration status of the subscribers will be signalled via the LEDs of the speed dialling keys assigned to internal VoIP subscribers. If the corresponding VoIP subscriber is not registered at the PBX, its LED will blink yellow.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Display of Registration Status On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > signalling/ringer**.
2. Select or clear the **Registration status subscriber** check box.
   - ☑ Switches the display of the registration status on.
   - ☐ Switches the display of the registration status off.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Display of Registration Status On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > signalling > reg.status scr.**
2. Select or clear the **reg.status scr.** check box.
   - ☑ Switches the display of the registration status on.
   - ☐ Switches the display of the registration status off.
3. Tap on OK.

Answering Machine local

This section describes how to set up and operate the functions on your answering machine. Descriptions are given on what the functions do, how to operate them and – if possible – how to define these functions on programmable function keys.

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX (with Firmware 6.0A or later): During a call, the COMfortel 1400 allows you to accept another call and record it simultaneously on the local answering machine. When a second call is signalled as waiting, the PBX reserves the second call channel of the internal S_0 port for this function. At this particular time, a second telephone at the same port cannot initiate a call, accept an incoming call and pick up a call. Simultaneous call acceptance and recording by the local answering machine is not possible while another telephone is on a call at the same port. In order to ensure that the full scope of functions is available, you should connect only 1 telephone per port.

Hinweis: The answering machine function is only available on a COMfortel 1400 with an microSD/SDHC card inserted. In addition, the COMfortel Voicemail function must be activated via the Auerswald Upgrade Center (see Commissioning Instructions).

Topics

– Forwarding Incoming Calls to Answering Machine (page 331)
– Answering Machine Accepts Call – Call Acceptance (page 332)
– Readiness (page 333)
– Answering Machine List (page 337)
– List of Voice Memos (page 343)
– Announcements (page 349)
– Call Acceptance and Announcement Assignment (page 355)
– Basic Settings (page 359)
– Call Recording (page 366)
– Remote Access (page 374)
– Message Forwarding (page 382)
– Data Exchange (page 391)

Forwarding Incoming Calls to Answering Machine

Important: Forwarding call waiting calls only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX (as of firmware version 6.0A).

Requirements:

– Disabled readiness of the answering machine

When you receive a call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select **answer. machine**.
2. Tap on OK.

   The answering machine accepts the call.

Answering Machine Accepts Call – Call Acceptance

> **Note:** If the listen in function has been enabled on the answering machine, the loudspeaker on the telephone is switched on for listening in when a call is accepted by the answering machine.

If the answering machine has already accepted the call, proceed as described.

- Pick up the receiver or press the **Hook key**.

  You are connected with the caller.

Readiness

In order for the answering machine to accept calls and record messages, readiness must be enabled.

Important: Only for operation on the PBX COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/ VoIP: In addition to the readiness, the call acceptance of group calls must be switched on in order for the answering machine to accept calls and record messages (see chapter Answering Machine local > Basic Settings > Switching Call Acceptance of Group Calls On/Off).

Switching Readiness On/Off

Note:

Also when readiness is enabled, only calls of the types that have been activated for call acceptance will be accepted.

You can also switch readiness on and off remotely.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Readiness On/Off

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Global**.
2. Select or clear the **Answering machine readiness** check box.
   - ☑ Enables the readiness function.
   - ☐ Disables the readiness function.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Readiness On/Off

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

In order to switch readiness on or off, press the **function key** configured for readiness.

In addition, you can enable readiness from the idle state by tapping on , and disable it by tapping on . The symbol indicates the current state.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > functions > TAM readiness**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables readiness.

   switch off: Disables readiness.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Readiness

Press the key to switch readiness on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	The readiness function is enabled.
Off	The readiness function is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Readiness

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.

2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Answering machine - readiness** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Press the key to disable the readiness function.

   switch on: Press the key to enable the readiness function.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the readiness function on or off.

6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Readiness

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.

2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.

3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **TAM readiness** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Select the kind of switching. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Press the key to disable the readiness function.

   switch on: Press the key to enable the readiness function.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the readiness function on or off.

6. Tap on OK.

Answering Machine List

The telephone answering machine list can save up to 250 messages and call recordings made on the answering machine. The list also includes the date and time of the recording as well as the telephone number of the caller/communication partner. The recordings are numbered consecutively, with the last/latest recording assigned the number 1.

You can call someone who has called you directly from the answering machine list.

The LED of the message key indicates whether entries are present on the answering machine list.

Opening the Answering Machine List

Opening can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

To open the answering machine list, press the **function key** configured for it or press the **menu key** to open the menu **answer.machine > functions > TAM list**.

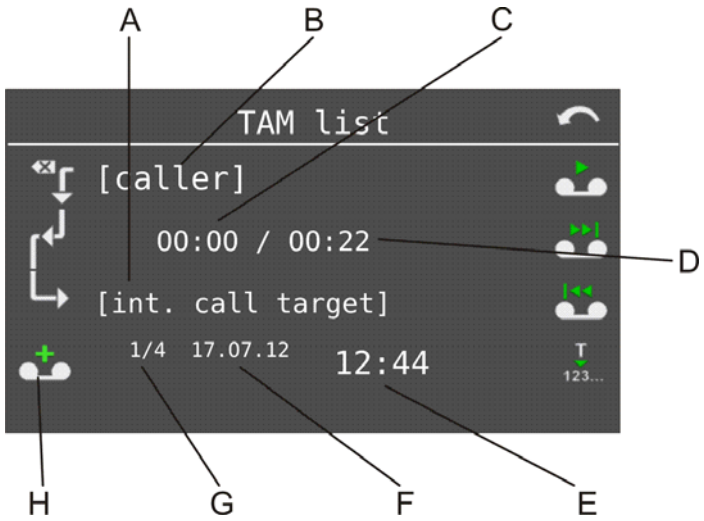
Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **message key**.

   The available lists are displayed. To the right next to the selection of lists, the respective number of existing recordings/calls is displayed.

2. Select **TAM list** to open the answering machine list (this is skipped if the other lists are empty).

The following information about the recording is shown on the display:



A Internal call target

B Caller

Note: If the telephone number has been assigned a name in the telephone book of the system telephone, this will be displayed.

C Length of time the recording has been played back

D Entire length of the recording

E Time of recording

F Date of recording

G Consecutive number of recordings/number of existing recordings

Note: The latest recording is displayed with consecutive number 1.

H Recording type:

new message

older message already played back

call recording

Note: If you have activated automatic playback, the new recordings are automatically played back in sequence after the answering machine list is opened. The latest recording is played back first.

3. Select one of the following options:

Deletes the displayed recording.

Starts the playback of the recording.

Pages to the next (older) recording.

Pages to the previous (more recent) recording.

Accepts the entry into dial preparation or into the telephone book, if applicable.

4. If you would like to leave the menu, press the **Home key**.

Listening to recordings (messages and call recordings)

Listening can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the answering machine list.
2. Use and to scroll to the desired recording.
3. Tap on to start playing back the recording.

Note: You can also pick up the receiver to prevent others present from listening.

The recording is played back.

4. Select one of the following options:

Deletes the recording currently being played back.

Interrupts playback.

Skips the recording currently being played back.

Repeats the previous recording or the one currently being played back.

Accepts the entry into dial preparation or into the telephone book, if applicable.

5. If you would like to leave the menu, press the **Home key**.

Note: You can also access and listen to the recordings remotely.

Dialling from the Answering Machine List

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the answering machine list.
2. Use and to scroll to the desired recording.
3. Tap on in order to accept the telephone number into the dial preparation.
4. Pick up the receiver or press the **Hook key**.

   The subscriber is called.

Note: If you would like to exit the menu without dialling the number displayed, press the **Home key**.

Configuring the LED Message Key

See:

– Configuring the LED of the Message Key (page 144)

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Answering Machine List

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to open the answering machine list.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the answering machine list is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	There are no new entries. All of the entries in the list have been viewed, but have not yet been deleted.
Green (blinking)	The list contains new entries that have not yet been viewed.
Off	The list is empty.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Answering Machine List

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Answering machine - list** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Answering Machine List

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **TAM list** function.
5. Tap on OK.

List of Voice Memos

Up to 250 voice memos including date, time, and length of the recording can be saved in this list. The recordings are numbered consecutively, with the last/latest recording assigned the number 1.

The LED of the message key indicates entries in the voice memo list.

Recording Memos

The recording can be made as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

To record voice memos, press a **function key** configured for recording voice memos.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > functions > TAM voice memo**.
2. Tap on OK next to **start of record.** to start the recording.

   The recording proceeds.
3. Record the memo.
4. Tap on OK next to **end of recording** to end the recording.
5. Tap on OK to save the recording.

Note: Recordings with a recording time shorter than 1 second are discarded by the telephone.

Configuring and Operating Function Key Recording Voice Memos

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to start recording a voice memo.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the associated LED indicates whether a voice memo is currently being recorded.

LED signalling on the key:

Red (blinking) A voice memo is being recorded.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Recording Voice Memos

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Answering machine - voice memo** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Recording Voice Memos

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **TAM voice memo** function.
5. Tap on OK.

Opening the List of Voice Memos

Opening can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

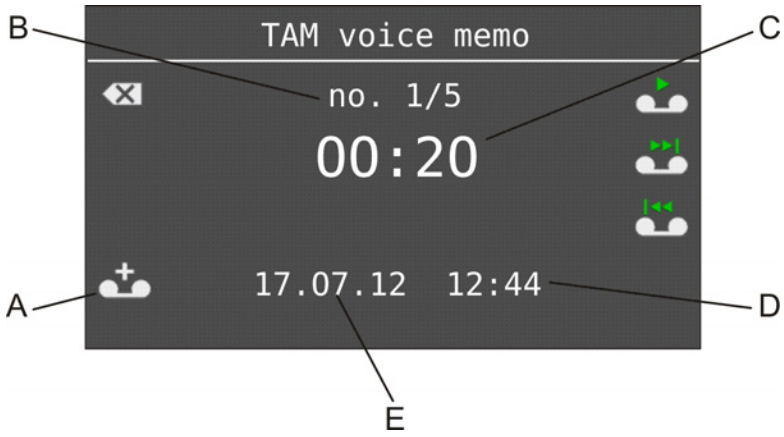
Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **message key**.

   The available lists are displayed. To the right next to the selection of lists, the respective numbers of existing recordings and calls are displayed.
2. Select **TAM voice memos** to open the list of voice memos (this is skipped if the other lists are empty).

The following information about the recording is shown on the display:



A Recording type:

new voice memo

older voice memo already played back

B Consecutive number of recording/number of existing recordings

---

Note: The latest recording is displayed with consecutive number 1.

C Length of the recording

D Time of recording

E Date of recording

Note: If you have activated automatic playback, the new recordings are automatically played back in sequence after the list of voice memos is opened. The latest recording is played back first.

---

3. Select one of the following options:

Deletes the displayed recording.

Starts the playback of the recording.

Pages to next (older) recording.

Pages to the previous (more recent) recording.

4. If you would like to leave the menu, press the **Home key**.

Listening to Recordings (Memos)

Listening can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the voice memo list.
2. Use and to scroll to the desired recording.
3. Tap on to start playing back the recording.

   Note: You can also pick-up the receiver to prevent others present from listening.

   The recording is played back.
4. Select one of the following options:

   Deletes the recording currently being played back.

   Interrupts playback.

   Skips the recording currently being played back.

   Repeats the previous recording or the one currently being played back.
5. If you would like to leave the menu, press the **Home key**.

Configuring the LED Message Key

See:

– Configuring the LED of the Message Key (page 144)

Announcements

In addition to standard announcements, the answering machine lets you manage customised announcements.

Existing announcements can be transferred to a SD card using COMfortel Set or new announcements can be recorded over the phone.

The announcements can be assigned to different types of calls as well as to different callers.

Creating a New Announcement

The creation can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > edit announcem.**.
2. Tap on in front of **new announcement** to record a new announcement (this step is skipped if there are not yet any announcements).
3. Enter the name. Possible entries:

   Up to 8 digits

   Numbers and characters using the 0...9 keys
4. Tap on OK.
5. Tap on OK next to **start of record.** to start recording the announcement.

   The recording proceeds.
6. Record the announcement.
7. Tap on OK next to **end of recording** to end recording the announcement.

Note:

You have the option of recording the announcement again (by selecting **new announcement** option) or listening to the announcement that you recorded (by selecting the **playback** option).

Recordings with a recording time shorter than 1 second are discarded by the telephone.

8. Select **store** to save the recorded announcement in the announcement list.

Editing Existing Announcement in List

Editing can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

In order to edit an announcement, press the **function key** configured for editing announcements.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > edit announcem.**.
2. Scroll to the desired entry.
3. Tap on .
4. Select **change**.
5. Overwrite the name, if necessary. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 8 digits

   Digits and characters
6. Tap on OK.
7. Tap on OK to overwrite the existing announcement.
8. Tap on OK next to **start of record.** to start recording the announcement.

The recording proceeds.

9. Record the announcement.
10. Tap on OK next to **end of recording** to end recording the announcement.

Note:

You have the option of recording the announcement again (by selecting **new announcement** option) or listening to the announcement that you recorded (by selecting the **playback** option).

Recordings with a recording time shorter than 1 second are discarded by the telephone.

---

11. Select **store** to save the recorded announcement in the announcement list.

Deleting an Existing Announcement from List

Deleting can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

In order to delete an announcement, press the **function key** configured.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > edit announcem.**.
2. Scroll to the desired entry.
3. Tap on .
4. Select **delete**.
5. Tap on OK to confirm the action.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Editing Announcements

Press the key for general functions while the telephone is in the idle state to open the announcement selection menu. After selecting an announcement, you can edit it.

While the telephone is in the idle state, press the key defined for opening the menu for editing the configured announcement.

LED signalling on the key:

None

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Editing Announcements

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Answering machine - edit announcement** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Editing a Defined Announcement

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Answering machine - edit announcement defined**.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. Select an announcement from the **Announcement** list.

   If you would like to select an announcement that is stored on the telephone SD card, but is not listed as a selection in the list field, click . The announcements are read from the SD card and then displayed in the list field.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Editing Announcements

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **TAM edit announc** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of key. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of keys.

   general: Press the key to open the menu for selecting an assignment from the list. (No other action is required.)

   defined: Press the key to open the menu for editing the configured announcement.
6. Tap on .
7. Select an announcement from the list.
8. Tap on

.

Call Acceptance and Announcement Assignment

Call acceptance and announcement assignment can be configured to be call-dependent.

Detailed Information about Call Acceptance and Announcement Assignment

The type of call acceptance can be configured depending on the type of call.

- **A** **Anonymous calls** (caller transmits no telephone number)
- **B** **From contact** (caller transmits a telephone number contained in the telephone book)
- **C** **External calls** (caller is an external subscriber)
- **D** **Internal calls** (caller is an internal subscriber)
- **E** **Door terminal calls** (caller is any door terminal)
- **F** **Other calls**

The sequence displayed here corresponds to the sequence that is taken into account in the settings. Applicable call types, for which no settings (**Next rule**) have been configured, are not taken into account for an incoming call. Instead, the next applicable call type is sought out. If a setting has not been made for any of the applicable call types, the settings of the call type **Other calls** are used.

Example

The following example illustrates taking the settings into account:

Initial situation

- Different settings have been made regarding call acceptance and announcement for external calls (call type **C**) and internal calls (call type **D**) as well as for anonymous calls (call type **A**).
- No settings have been made for calls from a contact (**B**), door terminal calls (**E**) and other calls (**F**).
- The answering machine is switched on.

Call 1

Properties of call 1:

- The caller is an external subscriber who transmits a telephone number.
- The transmitted telephone number is entered as a contact in the telephone book.

Sequence for call 1:

- The call type **A** applies due to the existing telephone number display.
- For the first applicable call type **B**, no setting are present.
- The existing setting for the next applicable call type **C** is used.

Call 2

Properties of call 2:

- The caller is a door terminal.

Sequence for call 2:

- The call types **A** to **D** are not taken into account for door terminal calls.
- Not setting is present for call type **E**.
- The existing setting for call type other calls **F** is used, in this case the default setting **Announcement and recording** with the default announcement STANDARD.WAV.

Configuring Call Acceptance and Announcement Assignment

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure Call Acceptance and Announcement Assignment

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Call Acceptance**.
2. Depending on the call type, proceed as described.
   - All call types except **From Contact**: In the **Call acceptance** list field, select one of the following options for the call type in question.

Next rule: Type of call is not taken into account. The type of call acceptance depends on the call type next applicable to the call. If **Next rule** has been selected for all the applicable call types, the settings of the call type **Other calls** are used.

Announcement and recording: The caller hears the announcement selected under **Announcement** and can then leave a message on the answering machine.

Only announcement: The caller hears the announcement selected under **Announcement**; however, he cannot leave a message on the answering machine.

No call acceptance: The call made by the corresponding caller is not accepted by the answering machine.

- Only **From Contact**: In the **Call acceptance** list field, select one of the following options for the call type in question.

  Next rule: Type of call is not taken into account. The type of call acceptance depends on the call type next applicable to the call. If **Next rule** has been selected for all the applicable call types, the settings of the call type **Other calls** are used.

  As defined in Contact: Enables call acceptance on the answering machine to be changed and the announcement for every single telephone book contact.

3. In the **Announcement** list field, select the desired announcement for the call type in question.

   If you would like to select an announcement on the telephone SD card, but is not listed as a selection in the list field, click . The announcements are read from the SD card and then displayed in the list field.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure Call Acceptance and Announcement Assignment

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > functions > Call Acceptance**.

2. Select the type of call for which you would like to configure call acceptance.

3. Depending on the call type, proceed as described.

   - All call types except **From Contact**: Select one of the following options for the call type in question.

     Next rule: Type of call is not taken into account. The type of call acceptance depends on the call type which is applicable to the call next. If **Next rule** has been selected for all the applicable call types, the settings of the call type **Other calls** are used.

     announc/record.: At the end, the caller hears the selected announcement and can then leave a message on the answering machine.

     announcem.only: At the end, the caller hears the selected announcement; however, he cannot leave a message on the answering machine.

     no call accept.: The call made by the corresponding caller is not accepted by the answering machine.

   - Only **From Contact**: Select one of the following options for the call type in question.

     Next rule: Type of call is not taken into account. The type of call acceptance depends on the call type which is applicable to the call next. If **Next rule** has been selected for all the applicable call types, the settings of the call type **Other calls** are used.

     From Contact: Enables call acceptance on the answering machine to be changed and the announcement for every single telephone book contact.

4. Scroll through the announcement list to your selection.

   The name of the announcement along with the creation date and time is displayed.

5. Tap on OK.

Basic Settings

Default settings have already been configured for the basic functions on the answering machine. These basic functions can be adapted to your own specific requirements as described in the following.

Configuring Call Acceptance Time

The call acceptance time indicates the number of seconds after which the answering machine accepts a call.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Call Acceptance Time

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Global**.
2. Enter a value in the **Call acceptance time (1-99 seconds)** entry field. Possible entries:

   1 to **99**: The answering machine accepts the call, depending on the entry, after 1 to 99 minutes.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Call Acceptance Time

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > call accept time**.

2. Enter a value. Possible entries:

   1 to **99**: The answering machine accepts the call, depending on the entry, after 1 to 99 seconds.

3. Tap on OK.

Note: If you have enabled the remote access toll saver, the call accept time depends on whether new messages are present or not.

Configuring Maximum Recording Time

The maximum recording time indicates the number of minutes after which the answering machine ends a recording automatically (in as far as the caller has not already hung up).

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Maximum Recording Time

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Global**.

2. Enter a value in the entry field **Recording time general (in minutes, 99 = max. storage utilisation)**. Possible entries:

   0: No recording takes place. The caller hears only an announcement.

   1 to **98**: The maximum recording time is configured (1 to 98 minutes).

   99: The recording time is unlimited (maximum storage utilisation).

Note: Recordings with a recording time shorter than 1 second are discarded by the telephone.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Maximum Recording Time

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > recording time**.
2. Enter a value. Possible entries:

   0: No recording takes place. The caller hears only an announcement.

   1 to **98**: The maximum recording time is configured (1 to 98 minutes).

   99: The recording time is unlimited (maximum storage utilisation).
3. Tap on OK.

Note: Recordings with a recording time shorter than 1 second are discarded by the telephone.

Configuring Maximum Recording Time for Door Terminal Calls

The maximum recording time for door terminal calls indicates the number of minutes after which the answering machine ends the recording of a door terminal call automatically.

Note that the recording cannot be actively ended from the door terminal. Therefore, a door terminal call recording lasts as long as you have defined it.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Maximum Recording Time for Door Terminal Calls

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Global**.
2. Enter a value in the **Recording time door (in minutes)** entry field. Possible entries:

0: No recording takes place. The caller hears only an announcement.

1 to **98**: The maximum recording time is configured (1 to 98 minutes).

99: The recording time is unlimited (maximum storage utilisation).

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Maximum Recording Time for Door Terminal Calls

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > record. time door**.
2. Enter a value. Possible entries:

   0: No recording takes place. The caller hears only an announcement.

   1 to **98**: The maximum recording time is configured (1 to 98 minutes).

   99: The recording time is unlimited (maximum storage utilisation).
3. Tap on OK.

Switching Listen in Function On/Off

If the listen in function is enabled, the loudspeaker on the telephone is switched on for listening in when a call is accepted by the answering machine. Depending on whether to listen to your own annoucement every time or not, it can also be configured if the loudspeaker on the telephone is switched on or off during playback of the announcement.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Listen in Function On/Off

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Global**.
2. In the **Listen in** list field, select one of the following options:

   off: Disables the listen in function.

   with announcement: Enables the listen in function. The loudspeaker on the telephone is switched on during playback of the announcement.

   without announcement: Enables the listen in function. The loudspeaker on the telephone is switched off during playback of the announcement.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Listen in Function On/Off

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > listen in**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   off: Disables the listen in function.

   with announcem.: Enables the listen in function. The loudspeaker on the telephone is switched on during playback of the announcement.

   w/o announcement: Enables the listen in function. The loudspeaker on the telephone is switched off during playback of the announcement.

Switching Automatic Playback On/Off

If automatic playback is enabled, the new recordings are played back automatically after the answering machine list or the voice memo list is open.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Automatic Playback On/Off

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Global**.
2. Select or clear the **Automatic playback of all recordings** check box.
   - ☑ Enables automatic playback.
   - ☐ Disables automatic playback.

   Note: Call recordings are excluded from automatic playback.

Further steps:

– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Automatic Playback On/Off

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > autom. playback**.
2. Select or clear the **autom. playback** check box.
   - Enables automatic playback.
   - Disables automatic playback.
3. Tap on OK.

Switching Call Acceptance of Group Calls On/Off

If the call acceptance of group calls is switched on, calls for groups of which the telephone is a member are accepted by the answering machine.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Call Acceptance of Group Calls On/Off

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Global**.
2. Select or clear the **Group calls are accepted by the answering machine** check box.
   - ☑ Enables call acceptance of group calls.
   - ☐ Disables call acceptance of group calls.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Call Acceptance of Group Calls On/Off

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > call for group**.
2. Select or clear the **call for group** check box.
   - Enables call acceptance of group calls.
   - Disables call acceptance of group calls.
3. Tap on OK.

Call Recording

The call recording function enables telephone calls to be recorded, for example, for later evaluation. In addition to the automatic recording of all calls, it is also possible to record calls manually. This functions independent of the automatic call recording function. This allows calls to be recorded in pieces.

Executing Call Recording

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX (with Firmware 6.0A or later): The telephone allows the simultaneous connection and recording on the local answering machine during a call. If the answering machine already is recording a simultaneous call, the Call Recording of the current call is not possible.

Note: Always ask your communication partner to give his approval for recording the call. You are liable to prosecution, if you record a call without your communication partner‘s knowledge (breach of confidentiality of the word). For reasons of data protection, an info tone informs your communication partner that the call is being recorded.

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

To start or end recording during a call, press the **function key** configured for initiating call recording.

Or, during a call, proceed as described in the following.

1. Select the **TAM call record.** function.
2. Tap on OK to start call recording.

   The call is recorded.
3. Tap on OK to end call recording.

Note: Recordings with a recording time shorter than 1 second are discarded by the telephone.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Recording Initiation On/Off

Press the key during a call to switch call recording on. Press the key again to turn it off.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:

Red (blinking) The current call is recorded.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Call Recording Initiation

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Answering machine - call recording** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Call Recording Initiation

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **TAM call record.** function.
5. Tap on OK.

Switching Automatic Call Recording On/Off

If automatic call recording has been enabled, every call (incoming and outgoing) is recorded completely.

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX (with Firmware 6.0A or later): The telephone allows the simultaneous connection and recording on the local answering machine during a call. If the answering machine already is recording a simultaneous call, the Call Recording of the current call is not possible.

Note:

Always ask your communication partner to give his approval for recording the call. You are liable to prosecution, if you record a call without your communication partner‘s knowledge (breach of confidentiality of the word). For reasons of data protection, an info tone informs your communication partner that the call is being recorded.

Recordings with a recording time shorter than 1 second are discarded by the telephone.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Automatic Call Recording On/Off

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Global**.
2. Select or clear the **Automatic call recording** check box.
   - ☑ Enables automatic call recording.
   - ☐ Disables automatic call recording.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Automatic Call Recording On/Off

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

Press the **function key** configured for automatic call recording to switch automatic call recording on or off.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > functions > TAM aut.call rec**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables automatic call recording.

   switch off: Disables automatic call recording.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Automatic Call Recording

Press the key to switch the automatic call recording function on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:

Red	Automatic call recording is enabled.
Red (blinking)	The current call is recorded. (Signalling only occurs here if automatic call recording enabled; not, however, if call recording is enabled during a call.)
Off	Automatic call recording is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Automatic Call Recording

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Answering machine - automatic call recording** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Press the key to disable automatic call recording.

   switch on: Press the key to enable automatic call recording.

   switch over: Press the key to switch automatic call recording over.

6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Automatic Call Recording

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **TAM aut.call rec** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of switching. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Press the key to disable automatic call recording.

   switch on: Press the key to enable automatic call recording.

   switch over: Press the key to switch automatic call recording over.
6. Tap on OK.

Switching Info Tone for Call Recording On/Off

In order to notify your communication partner that the call is being recorded, you can switch on the call recording info tone.

> **Note:** Always ask your communication partner to give his approval for recording the call. You are liable to prosecution, if you record a call without your communication partner‘s knowledge (breach of confidentiality of the word).

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Info Tone for Call Recording On/Off

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Global**.
2. Select or clear the **Info tone call recording** check box.
   - ☑ Enables the call recording info tone.
   - ☐ Disables the call recording info tone.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Info Tone for Call Recording On/Off

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > call rec.tone**.
2. Select or clear the **call rec.tone** check box.

Enables the call recording info tone.

Disables the call recording info tone.

3. Tap on OK.

Remote Access

Remote access is used to access and operate the answering machine from another internal telephone or from an external telephone.

Remote Access Variants

The answering machine supports three different remote access variants:

Remote access toll saver off

The answering machine always accepts a call after the call accept time configured.

After the answering machine has accepted the call, you can initiate remote access during the announcement and the following 10 seconds (by pressing the * key + user PIN + # key).

Remote access toll saver on

The answering machine only accepts a call after the call accept time configured if there are new messages present. Otherwise, if no new messages are present, the time it takes to accept a call is 10 seconds (approx. 2 rings) longer than the configured call accept time.

This notifies you before the answering machine accepts the call whether access is necessary Alternatively, you can hang up.

After the answering machine has accepted the call, you can initiate remote access during the announcement and the following 10 seconds (by pressing the * key + user PIN + # key).

Note:

Note that when remote access toll saver is enabled, the call accept time extended by 10 seconds applies to each caller (at least as long as there are no new messages present). Take this into consideration when configuring the call accept time.

If you have configured settings on your PBX or telephone that cause the telephone to delay making a call (for example, call forwarding on no reply for subscribers), using remote access toll saver is not meaningful.

Remote Access Toll Saver with Quick Access

The answering machine automatically accepts a call when the quick remote access number is transmitted and new messages are present. Otherwise, if no new messages are present, the time it takes to accept a call is 10 seconds (approx. 2 rings) longer than the configured call accept time.

As soon as the answering machine has accepted the call, you can start remote access. Entering the user PIN is not necessary.

Note:

When quick access is enabled, the call accept time varies only if the quick remote access number has been correctly transmitted. For all other callers, the answering machine accepts the call after the configured call accept time (independently of whether new messages are present or not).

If you have configured settings on your PBX or telephone that cause the telephone to delay making a call (for example, call forwarding on no reply for subscribers), using quick access is not meaningful.

Configuring Remote Access

Remote access is configured as described in the following.

- Switch remote access on.
- Assign a user PIN.
- If you would like to save money by not using remote access, you can switch the remote access toll saver on as long as no new messages are present.
- If you would like to simplify remote access by not entering a user PIN and instead using your telephone number, switch the remote access toll saver with quick access on. In addition, enter one or two quick access telephone numbers.
- If you would like the answering machine to notify you as soon as new message is present, configure message forwarding and switch it on when required.

Switching Remote Access On/Off

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Remote Access On/Off

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Remote access**.
2. Select or clear the **Remote access** check box.
   - ☑ Enables remote access.
   - ☐ Disables remote access.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Remote Access On/Off

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > remote access**.
2. Select or clear the **remote access** check box.
   - Enables remote access.
   - Disables remote access.
3. Tap on OK.

Switching Remote Access Toll Saver (and Quick Access) On/Off

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Remote Access Toll Saver On/Off

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Remote access**.
2. In the **Remote access toll saver** list field, select one of the following options:

   off: Disables remote access toll saver.

   on: Enables remote access toll saver.

   Quick remote access: Enables remote access toll saver with quick access. Also requires entering a quick remote access number.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Remote Access Toll Saver On/Off

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > r/a toll saver**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   off: Disables remote access toll saver.

   on: Enables remote access toll saver.

   quick access: Enables remote access toll saver with quick access. Also requires entering a quick remote access number.

Entering Quick Access Telephone Numbers

For remote access toll saver with quick access, up to two quick access telephone numbers can be entered. The caller who transmits this quick remote access number when making a call can, when quick access is configured, access all of the recordings saved on the answering machine without having to enter the user PIN.

The entry can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Enter Quick Access Telephone Numbers

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Remote access**.
2. In each of the entry fields **Quick remote access number 1** and **Quick remote access number 2**, enter a quick remote access number. Possible entries:

   Up to 20 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Note: Click to accept a telephone number from the telephone book.

3. In each of the list fields **Quick remote access number 1** and **Quick remote access number 2**, select one of the following options:

   Internal no.: Defines the quick remote access number entered as an internal telephone number.

   External no.: Defines the quick remote access number entered as an external telephone number.

Further steps:

– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Enter Quick Access Telephone Numbers

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > quick access**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   ---: Allows a quick remote access number to be entered.

   [telephone number]: Allows existing quick remote access numbers to be changed.

   Note: If you press the **Telephone book key** before entering the quick remote access number, you can select the desired telephone number from the telephone book.

   ---

3. Enter the quick remote access number. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 24 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, always enter external telephone numbers with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).

   ---

4. Tap on OK.

Executing Remote Access

Requirements:

– Configured remote access

– DTMF dialling support on the internal or external telephone

– Knowledge of the user PIN on the system telephone

– When readiness on the answering has been switched off: Configured remote access toll saver with quick remote access and transmission of a quick remote access number entered in advance by the telephone making the call

1. Call the system telephone.

After the configured call accept time has elapsed, the answering telephone accepts the call. You hear the configured announcement.

Note: When remote access toll saver is enabled, the call accept time may change. When remote access toll saver with quick remote access has been enabled, you also immediately hear the announcement for remote access (REMOTE.WAV). You can begin remote access (without PIN entry).

---

2. Initiate remote access during the announcement and the following 10 seconds by entering the following DTMF code: *** user PIN #**

Note:

If you make a mistake while entering the user PIN, you can reenter it after pressing the star key (*).

When the entry is correct, you will hear a positive confirmation tone (6 short tones). If the entry is incorrect, you will hear a negative confirmation tone (3 long tones).

You then hear the announcement for remote access REMOTE.WAV.

3. Execute remote access by entering the following codes.

   2: Plays back new recordings (only messages).

   3: Plays back all recordings (call recordings and messages).

   4: Jumps back to the previous recording.

   5: Repeats the recording currently being played back.

   6: Jumps to the next recording.

   7: Deletes the recording currently being played back.

   8: Ends playback.

   # automatic ID: Enables the entry of the automatic function.

   *** 10**: Disables readiness.

   *** 11**: Enables readiness.

   *** 20**: Disables time control for the automatic function.

   *** 21**: Enables time control for the automatic function.

   *** 30**: Disables message forwarding.

   *** 31**: Enables message forwarding.

   *** 32 telephone number #**: Changes the destination for message forwarding.

   *** 70**: Deletes all of the recordings.

*** 99**: Ends remote access and records a voice memo. After this, hang up the receiver.

Hang-up: Ends remote access.

Message Forwarding

Message forwarding enables the answering machine to notify you of new messages.

Message Forwarding Sequence

Message forwarding proceeds as follows:

- When a caller leaves a new message, the telephone dials the destination number entered after the waiting time has elapsed.
- If the person receiving the call picks up the receiver, first the announcement and then the new message are played back.
- Remote access can be started within 30 seconds after the new messages have been played back.

Switching Message Forwarding On/Off

If message forwarding has been configured, it can be enabled, for example, for times when you leave the building.

> **Note:** You can also switch message forwarding on and off or enter a new destination number by remote access.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Message Forwarding On/Off

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Message forwarding**.
2. Select or clear the **Message forwarding** check box.

☑ Enables message forwarding.

☐ Disables message forwarding.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Message Forwarding On/Off

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

In order to switch message forwarding on or off, press the **function key** configured for message forwarding.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > functions > TAM message fwd.**
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables message forwarding.

   switch off: Disables message forwarding.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Message Forwarding

Press the key to switch message forwarding on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	Message forwarding is enabled.
Off	Message forwarding is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key Message Forwarding

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Answering machine - message forwarding** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Press the key to disable message forwarding.

   switch on: Press the key to enable message forwarding.

   switch over: Press the key to switch message forwarding on or off.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:

– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Message Forwarding

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.

2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **TAM message fwd.** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of switching. Tapping on allows you to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Press the key to disable message forwarding.

   switch on: Press the key to enable message forwarding.

   switch over: Press the key to switch message forwarding on or off.
6. Tap on OK.

Configuring Announcement for Message Forwarding

Before the new messages are played back, the person being called hears the default announcement FORWARD.WAV.

Instead of the default announcement, you can configure your own announcement for message forwarding.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Announcement for Message Forwarding

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Message forwarding**.
2. Select the desired announcement from the **Announcement** list field.

If you would like to select an announcement that is stored on the telephone SD card in the ANNOUNCE directory, but is not listed as a selection in the list field, click . The announcements are read from the SD card and then displayed in the list field.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Announcement for Message Forwarding

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > fwd announcement**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   own announcement: Switches on a customised announcement for message forwarding.

   standard announc: Switches on the default announcement for message forwarding. (No other action is required.)
3. Scroll through the announcement list to your selection.

   The name of the announcement along with the creation date and time is displayed.
4. Tap on OK to accept the announcement.

Configuring a Message Forwarding Target

A telephone number can be entered as a target for message forwarding. The new messages on the answering machine should be forwarded to the telephone number.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Message Forwarding Target

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Message forwarding**.
2. In the **Destination number** entry field, enter the destination number for message forwarding.

   Up to 40 digits

   Digits and characters

   Note: Click to accept a telephone number from the telephone book.

3. In the **Destination number** list field, select one of the following options:

   Internal no.: Defines the destination number entered as an internal telephone number.

   External no.: Defines the destination number entered as an external telephone number.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Message Forwarding Target

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > forward. target**.

   Note: If you press the **telephone book key** before entering the destination number, you can select the desired phone number from the telephone book.

2. Enter the destination number. The following entries are possible:

   Up to 40 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, external telephone numbers always with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be

changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).

3. Tap on OK.

Configuring Waiting Period for Message Forwarding

The waiting period for message forwarding indicates how many seconds after which a message that has just arrived is automatically forwarded.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Message Forwarding

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Message forwarding**.
2. Enter a value in the **Waiting period (in seconds)** entry field. Possible entries:

   0: A message that has just arrived is forwarded immediately.

   1 to **99**: After 1 to 99 minutes, a call that has recently arrived is forwarded, depending on the entry.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Message Forwarding

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > forwarding time**.
2. Enter a value. Possible entries:

0: A message that has just arrived is forwarded immediately.

1 to **99**: After 1 to 99 seconds, a call that has recently arrived is forwarded, depending on the entry.

3. Tap on OK.

Configuring Message Forwarding Repetition

Message forwarding repetition indicates how often message forwarding should be reattempted if it cannot be carried out successfully. This is the case, for example, if the subscriber could not be reached with the destination number entered.

The repetition waiting period indicates how many minutes should elapse between the individual attempts to repeat message forwarding.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Message Forwarding Repetition

Requirements:
– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Message forwarding**.
2. In the **Number of repetitions** list field, select one of the following options:

   None: No attempt is made to repeat message forwarding.

   1...9: Depending on the selection, message forwarding may be repeated 1 to 9 times.
3. In the **Number of repetitions** list field, select one of the following options:

   0 minutes...9 minutes: 0 to 9 minutes lie between the separate attempts, depending on the selection.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Message Forwarding Repetition

Requirements:

– An answering machine, put into operation (see Commissioning Instructions)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > fwd.repetitions**
2. Enter a value. Possible entries:

   0: No attempt is made to repeat message forwarding.

   1 to **9**: Depending on the entry, message forwarding may be repeated 1 to 9 times.
3. Tap on OK.
4. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **answer.machine > settings > fwd.repet.time**.
5. Enter a value. The following entry is possible:

   0 to **9**: 0 to 9 minutes lie between the separate attempts, depending on the entry.
6. Tap on OK.

Data Exchange

COMfortel Set can be used to transfer data, for example, recorded announcements, from the SD card to a PC or, in the other direction, from a PC to an SD card.

If the SD card is inserted into the SD slot on the telephone, a directory structure is automatically created on the SD card. The root directory of this directory structure is named CF1400. The following directories are created in this directory:

- ANNOUNCE (location where newly recorded announcements are saved)
- BACKUP (location of the backups)
- MEMO (location of the memos)
- MESSAGES (location of the messages and call recordings)
- PICTURES (location of the wallpapers)
- RINGTONE (location of the ringtones)
- SYSTEM (location of the synthetically generated signal tones as well as the standard announcements in the various languages)

Transferring Data from PC to SD Card

The transmission can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:
– SD card inserted into slot

You would like to transfer data saved on your computer to the SD card on your telephone. Proceed as described in the following.

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Data exchange**.

   When you open this page for the first time, a dialogue for reading out the directory structure on the SD card opens.

   a) Click **Yes**.

      The directory structure on the SD card is read out and then displayed under **SD card**.

2. Under **PC**, select the file or the directory in the directory tree that you would like to transfer to the SD card.

Note:

You can also transfer multiple files/directories to the SD card at the same time.

If you let the cursor hover over a file for a few seconds, a tool tip automatically opens with information about the corresponding file.

If you would like to listen to an announcement or recording stored on the PC on the loudspeaker, select the corresponding audio file (*.wav) and click .

3. Select the target directory in the directory tree under **SD card**, into which the data from the PC should be copied.
4. Click >>.

   The data is transferred to the SD card.

Note:

Audio files (*.wav) with 8 kHz, 8-bit and A-law encoding (also referred to as CCITT A-law) can be read from the SD card.

You can create a maximum of five directory levels one below the other in the directory tree under **SD card**, because otherwise problems may occur when the data is read out.

Transferring Data from SD Card to PC

The transmission can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:
– SD card inserted into slot

You would like to transfer a file saved on the SD card on your telephone to your PC. Proceed as described in the following.

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Data exchange**.

   When you open this page for the first time, a dialogue for reading out the directory structure on the SD card opens.

a) Click **Yes**.

The directory structure on the SD card is read out and then displayed under **SD card**.

2. Select the file or the directory in the directory tree under **SD card** that you would like to transfer to the PC.

Note:

You can also transfer multiple files/directories to the PC at the same time.

If you let the cursor hover over a file for a few seconds, a tool tip automatically opens with information about the corresponding file.

The Audio files (*.wav) for messages and call recordings (MESSAGES directory) generally display the date and time as well as the telephone number/caller name. Missing information is indicated by a dash.

---

3. Select the target directory in the directory tree under **PC**, in which the data from the SD card are to be copied.

Note:

If you would like to refresh the directory tree under **PC**, click .

If you would like to create a new directory in the directory tree under **PC**, click .

If you would like to select a different root directory in the directory tree under **PC**, click . Select the desired directory and click **Open** (this text is dependent on the operating system used).

---

4. Click .

The data is transferred to the PC.

Deleting Data from SD Card/PC

Deleting can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:

– SD card inserted into slot

You would like to delete data that is saved on your SD card or PC. Proceed as described in the following.

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Data exchange**.

   When you open this page for the first time, a dialogue for reading out the directory structure on the SD card opens.

   a) Click **Yes**.

      The directory structure on the SD card is read out and then displayed under **SD card**.

2. Select the file or directory that you would like to delete in the directory tree under **SD card/PC**.

   Note: You can also delete multiple files/directories at one time.

3. Click .

4. Click **Yes**.

   The data is deleted.

Selecting Another Telephone for Data Exchange

The selection can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:
– SD card inserted into slot

You would like to select another telephone for the data exchange. Proceed as described in the following.

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Data exchange**.

   When you open this page for the first time, a dialogue for reading out the directory structure on the SD card opens.

   a) Click **Yes**.

      The directory structure on the SD card is read out and then displayed under **SD card**.

2. Click .

   The **Connection routes** dialogue opens with the devices connected via the interface configured above.

3. Select the telephone that you would like to use to carry out the data exchange and click **OK**.

   The **PIN entry** dialogue opens.

   Note: Access to the telephone is only possible via the 6-digit PIN assigned in the PBX. You need to first select which PIN you would like to enter based on the authority level: the Admin PIN, one of the subadmin PINs or the user PIN that belongs to the telephone.

4. Enter the associated PIN and click **OK**.

Saving Standard Announcements on Telephone

COMfortel Set offers standard announcements in German, English and Italian, which can be loaded on the SD card of the telephone if necessary. The standard announcements include the announcement for call acceptance STANDARD.WAV, the announcement for remote access REMOTE.WAV and the announcement for message forwarding FORWARD.WAV.

The saving procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:
– SD card inserted into slot

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Data exchange**.

   When you open this page for the first time, a dialogue for reading out the directory structure on the SD card opens.

   a) Click **Yes**.

      The directory structure on the SD card is read out and then displayed under **SD card**.

2. Click the **Standard announcement** tab.

3. Click the national flag for the desired language located next to one of the following options:

   German standard announcements: German standard announcements are saved on the telephone.

   English standard announcements: English standard announcements are saved on the telephone.

   Italian standard announcements: Italian standard announcements are saved on the telephone.

   The standard announcements for the desired language are uploaded onto the SD card in the SYSTEM directory under the corresponding language abbreviation.

Note: The standard announcements used – whether German, English or Italian – depend on the language set on the telephone. The English standard announcements are used for all languages except German and Italian.

Voice Mailboxes of the PBX

This section describes how to configure and operate voice mailboxes. Moreover, it shows you how to record announcements, execute remote access, and forward messages, e.g. to a substitute.

Topics

– Voice Mailbox (page 398)
– Readiness (page 406)
– Configuration-Dependent Control (page 410)
– Voice Memos (page 414)
– Distribution of Messages (page 416)
– Announcements (page 420)
– Remote Access (page 425)
– Message Forwarding (page 431)
– Substitute Function (page 435)

Voice Mailbox

A voice mailbox which is assigned to the telephone or to a group can be operated like a local answering machine.

It saves the voice messages for an individual subscriber or a group and can be queried any time by the subscriber or the members of the group.

Voice messages and announcements are not stored in the telephone but in the PBX (in contrast to a local answering machine). The size of a voice mailbox is determined by the PBX, as well as the authorisation to use it. A voice mailbox can be assigned to an individual subscriber or to a group. Moreover, a subscriber may be granted authorisation for several voice mailboxes.

Important:

Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

For some PBX an optionally available module has to be inserted.

COMmander 6000/R/RX: COMmander VMF module

COMpact 5010 VoIP: COMpact 2VoIP module

COMpact 5020 VoIP: COMpact 2VoIP or 6VoIP module

The readiness of the local answering machine at the telephone will automatically be switched off if the assigned voice mailbox is used in the PBX. Querying voice messages, as well as replaying and deleting own announcements is still possible. The recording function can still be used.

Opening the Message List of the Voice Mailbox

Open the message list of the voice mailbox to query, replay, or delete messages or move them into an archive. If a subscriber is authorised to query several voice mailboxes, a list of further boxes will be offered for selection in addition to voice mailbox used.

The LED of the message key indicates whether entries are present on the message list.

Opening can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

To open the message list of the voice mailbox, press the **function key** configured for it or press the **menu key** to open the menu **Voice mailbox > functions > VMB open**.

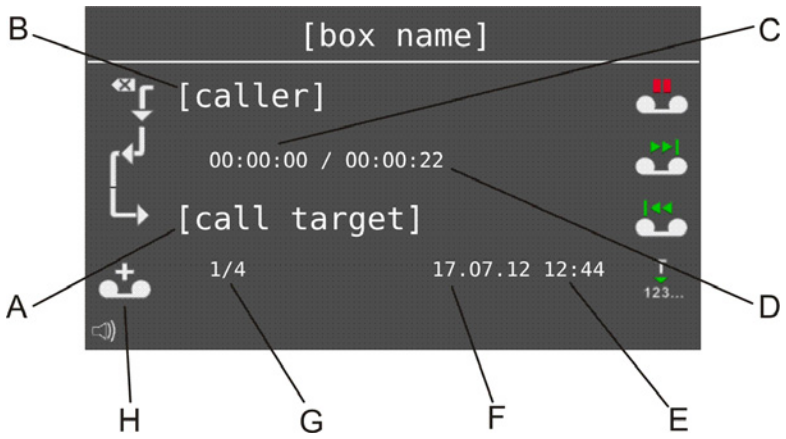
Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **message key**.

   The available lists are displayed. To the left next to the selection of lists, the respective numbers of existing recordings and calls are displayed.

2. Select **VMB used** (this is skipped if the other lists are empty).

   The following information about the recording is shown on the display:



A Internal call destination

B Caller

Note: If the telephone number has been assigned a name in the telephone book of the system telephone, this will be displayed.

C Length of time the recording has been replayed

D Entire length of the recording

E Time of recording

F Date of recording

G Consecutive number of recording/number of existing recordings

---

Note: The latest recording is displayed with consecutive number 1.

H Recording type:

new message

older message already played back

Note: The new recordings are automatically replayed in sequence after the voice mailbox is opened. The latest recording is replayed first.

3. Select one of the following options:

Deletes the displayed recording. If you press this key for a longer period of time, all messages from the message list will be deleted.

Starts the replay of the recording.

Interrupts the replay of the recording. If you press this key for a longer period of time, the system will go back to the start of the recording.

Scrolls to next (older) recording.

Scrolls to the previous (more recent) recording.

Accepts the entry into dial preparation or into the telephone book, if applicable.

4. If you would like to leave the menu, press the **Home key**.

Listening to Recordings

Listening can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Open the message list of the voice mailbox.
2. Use and to scroll to the desired recording.
3. Tap on to start replaying the recording.

Note: You can also pick-up the receiver to prevent others present from listening.

The recording is replayed.

4. Select one of the following options:

Deletes the displayed recording. If you press this key for a longer period of time, all messages from the message list will be deleted.

Starts the replay of the recording.

Interrupts the replay of the recording. If you press this key for a longer period of time, the system will go back to the start of the recording.

Scrolls to next (older) recording.

Scrolls to the previous (more recent) recording.

Accepts the entry into dial preparation or into the telephone book, if applicable.

5. If you would like to leave the menu, press the **Home key**.

Note: You can also access and listen to the recordings remotely.

Dialling from the Message List of the Voice Mailbox

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Open the message list of the voice mailbox.
2. Use and to scroll to the desired recording.
3. Tap on in order to accept the telephone number into the dial preparation.

Note:

The number cannot be taken over into dial preparation as long as switching between messages is performed.

A callback can only be made if the number of the caller has been transferred.

4. Pick up the receiver or press the **hook key**.

   The subscriber is called.

Note: If you would like to exit the menu without dialling the number displayed, hang up the receiver or press the **Home key**.

Configuring and Operating the Function Key to Open the Voice Mailbox

While the telephone is in the idle state, press the key generally assigned for accessing the function and then pick up the receiver to establish a connection to the voice mailbox. If you have been assigned several voice mailboxes, a list of all voice mailboxes will be opened.

Press the defined and assigned key in the idle state of the telephone to set up a connection to a defined voice mailbox.

If you press the defined and assigned key during recording, you an take over the call or open the assigned voice mailbox.

Note: Press the function key again to switch from the message entry to archive or vice versa. You can identify the archive by 🗁 before the name of the voice mailbox.

In addition, when functions are assigned on the first key level, the status of the voice mailbox is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key (for general key assignment):

Green (blinking)	There are new messages in at least one voice mailbox assigned to the subscriber.
Green	There are only messages which have already been listened to in at least one voice mailbox assigned to the subscriber.
Off	There are no new messages in the voice mailboxes assigned to the subscriber.

LED signalling on the key (for defined key assignment):

Red	A new message is being recorded. The call can be accepted by picking up the receiver.
Yellow (blinking)	The voice mailbox is full.
Yellow	The fill level of the voice mailbox has exceeded the warning limit.
Green (blinking)	There are new messages in the voice mailbox.
Green	There are only messages which have already been listened to in the voice mailbox
Off	There are no new messages in the voice mailbox.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for General Opening of the Message List of a Voice Mailbox

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **voice mailbox - open** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.
5. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Defined Opening of the Message List of a Voice Mailbox

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **voice mailbox - open defined** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.
5. In the **Number** entry field, enter the number of the voice mailbox whose message list is to be opened via the function key.
6. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Opening of the Message List of a Voice Mailbox

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to assign.
3. Select one of the following options:

   First level: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Second level: Keys are assigned on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **VMB open** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of key. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of keys.

   general: Press the key to open a voice mailbox. (No other action is required.)

   defined: Press the key to open the selected voice mailbox.
6. Tap on and select a voice mailbox from the list.
7. Tap on and enter a name.
8. Tap on .

Readiness

To enable the voice mailbox to accept calls and record messages, readiness must be enabled.

Switching Readiness On/Off

Note: You can also switch readiness on and off via remote access.

Switching on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

In order to switch readiness on or off, press the **function key** configured for readiness.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **voice mailbox > functions > VMB readiness** menu.
2. Select a voice mailbox from the list.
3. Select one of the following options:

   permanently on: Enables readiness.

   permanently off: Disables readiness.

Configuring and Operating the Function Key for Readiness

Press the generally assigned key to permanently switch the readiness of a voice mailbox to be selected on or off.

Press the defined and assigned key to switch a previously defined voice mailbox on or off or switch it over.

In addition, when functions are assigned on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:

Green	Readiness is enabled.
Yellow	The readiness of at least one voice mailbox has been switched off (only in case of general assignment). The readiness of the box is switched on, but the permanent configuration is inactive (only in case of defined assignment).
Off	Readiness is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Readiness (General)

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **voice mailbox - readiness** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.
5. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Readiness (Defined)

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **voice mailbox - readiness defined** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.
5. In the **Number** entry field, enter the number of the voice mailbox which is to be switched via the function key.
6. In the **Kknd of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch on: Press the key to enable the readiness mode.

   switch off: Press the key to disable the readiness mode.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the readiness mode on or off.
7. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Readiness

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to assign.
3. Select one of the following options:

   First level: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Second level: Keys are assigned on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **VMB readiness** function.
5. Select the kind of key. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of keys.

   general: If you press the key, one voice mailbox will be switched into readiness mode. (No other action is required.)

   defined: If you press the key, the selected voice mailbox will be switched into readiness mode.
6. Tap on and select a voice mailbox from the list.
7. Tap on and enter a name.
8. Only when the kind of key **defined** has been selected: Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Press the key to disable the readiness mode.

   switch on: Press the key to enable the readiness mode.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the readiness mode on or off.
9. Tap on .

Configuration-Dependent Control

The readiness of the voice mailbox be switched on permanently. In addition, however, there are alternative options. With the help of configuration-dependent control, the voice mailbox can be switched via the PBX configurations, e. g. day-night switching.

Switching the Configuration-Dependent Control On/Off

Switching on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

– Configurations made in the PBX

To enable configuration-dependent control, press a **function key** configured for configuration-dependent control. To disable onfiguration-dependent control, switch the readiness on.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **voice mailbox > functions > VMB config. control** menu.
2. Select a voice mailbox from the list.
3. Tap on OK.

Configuring and Operating the Function Key for Configuration-Dependent Control

Press the generally assigned key to enable configuration-dependent control for a voice mailbox, which remains to be selected.

Press the defined and assigned key to enable configuration-dependent control for a previously defined voice mailbox.

In addition, when functions are assigned on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:

Green	Configuration-dependent control is enabled. The permanent configuration is inactive.
Off	Configuration-dependent control is disabled. The permanent configuration is active.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Configuration-Dependent Control (General)

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

– Configurations made in the PBX

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **voice mailbox - config. control** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.
5. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Configuration-Dependent Control (Defined)

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it
– Configurations made in the PBX

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **voice mailbox - config. control defined** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.
5. In the **Number** entry field, enter the number of the voice mailbox which is to be switched via the function key.
6. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Configuration-Dependent Control

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

– Configurations made in the PBX

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to assign.
3. Select one of the following options:

   First level: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Second level: Keys are assigned on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **VMB config. control** function.
5. Select the kind of key. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of keys.

   general: Press the key to switch configuration-dependent control on. (No other action is required.)

   defined: Press the key to enable configuration-dependent control for the selected voice mailbox.
6. Tap on and select a voice mailbox from the list.
7. Tap on and enter a name.
8. Tap on .

Voice Memos

You can use the voice mailbox to save your own voice memos. Up to 250 voice memos including date, time, and length of the recording can be saved in the voice mailbox. The recordings are numbered consecutively, with the last/latest recording assigned the number 1.

You can listen to, edit, and delete voice memos like any other messages.

Configuring and Operating the Function Key for Recording Voice Memos

Press the key while the telephone is in the idle state to start recording a voice memo.

In addition, when functions are assigned on the first key level, the associated LED indicates whether a voice memo is currently being recorded.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	Recording mode
Yellow (blinking)	Connection setup to the voice mailbox
Off	The function is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Recording Voice Memos

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **voice mailbox - voice memo** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.

5. In the **Number** entry field, enter the number of the voice mailbox where you wish to record the voice memos.

6. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Recording Voice Memos

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.

2. Press the **function key** that you would like to assign.

3. Select one of the following options:

   First level: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Second level: Keys are assigned on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **VMB voice memo** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are shown on the display.

5. Tap on

and select a voice mailbox from the list.

6. Tap on and enter a name.

7. Tap on

.

Distribution of Messages

The messages in a voice mailbox can be distributed to other voice mailboxes.

Configuring and Operating the Function Key for Distributing Messages

Press the generally assigned key after calling a voice mailbox to distribute messages to another voice mailbox, which remains to be selected.

Press the defined and assigned key after calling a voice mailbox to distribute messages to a previously defined voice mailbox. Moreover, you can select whether you want to move or copy your messages.

LED signalling on the key:

None

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for the General Distribution of Messages

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **voice mailbox - distribute messages** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.

5. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Defined Distribution of Messages

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **voice mailbox - distribute messages defined** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.

5. In the **Number** entry field, enter the number of the voice mailbox to where messages are to be distributed.

   Note: If you have entered your own voice mailbox as number, the messages will be distributed to the archive.

   ---

6. In the **kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

move: Press the key to move messages. The messages in the voice mailbox will be deleted.

copy: Press the key to copy messages. The messages in the voice mailbox remain unchanged.

7. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Distributing Messages

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to assign.
3. Select one of the following options:

   First level: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Second level: Keys are assigned on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **VMB - distribute messages** function.
5. Select the kind of key. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of keys.

   general: Press the key to distribute messages to another voice mailbox. (No other action is required.)

   defined: Press the key to distribute messages to the selected voice mailbox.
6. Tap on

and enter the number of the voice mailbox in the entry field, to where messages are to be distributed.

7. Tap on and enter a name.
8. Select whether you want to copy or move the message. Tap on to switch over between the two modes.

   move: Press the key to move messages. The messages in the voice mailbox will be deleted.

   copy: Press the key to copy messages. The messages in the voice mailbox remain unchanged.
9. Tap on OK.

Announcements

For each assigned voice mailbox you can record announcements using the telephone. You can replay, edit, and delete your own announcements. In addition to the standard announcement from the voice files, maximally 10 own announcements can be stored per voice mailbox.

Create a New Announcement

Announcements can be created, as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Press the **Menu key** and open the **voice mailbox > settings > edit announc.** menu.
2. Select the voice mailbox from the list for which you want to record the announcement.
3. If necessary, scroll to the next empty entry.
4. Tap on to record an announcement.
5. Enter the name. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Numbers and characters using the 0...9 keys.
6. Tap on OK.
7. Tap on OK next to **start of recording** to start recording the announcement.

   The recording proceeds.
8. Record the announcement.
9. Tap on OK next to **end of recording** to end recording the announcement.

Note:

You have the option of listening to the announcement that you have recorded (by selecting the option).

Recordings with a recording time shorter than 3 seconds are discarded by the telephone.

10. Tap on OK to save the recorded announcement in the announcement list.

Note: If you would like to switch on the announcement for the call acceptance of the voice mailbox, tap on . By switching on another announcement of the list or by tapping on you can switch off the announcement for the call acceptance of the voice mailbox. If no announcement of the list is switched on, the standard announcement is used for the call acceptance of the voice mailbox.

Edit an Existing Announcement

Editing can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

Proceed as described in the following.

1. Press the **Menu key** and open the **voice mailbox > settings > edit announc.** menu.
2. Select the voice mailbox from the list for which you want to edit an announcement.
3. Scroll to the desired entry.
4. Tap on .
5. Overwrite the name, if necessary. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters
6. Tap on OK.
7. Tap on OK next to **start of recording** to start recording the announcement.

   The recording proceeds.
8. Record the announcement.

9. Tap on OK next to **end of recording** to end recording the announcement.

Note:

You have the option of listening to the announcement that you have recorded (by selecting the option).

Recordings with a recording time shorter than 3 seconds are discarded by the telephone.

---

10. Tap on OK to save the recorded announcement in the announcement list.

Note: If you would like to switch on the announcement for the call acceptance of the voice mailbox, tap on . By switching on another announcement of the list or by tapping on you can switch off the announcement for the call acceptance of the voice mailbox. If no announcement of the list is switched on, the standard announcement is used for the call acceptance of the voice mailbox.

Delete an Existing Announcement

Deleting can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

Proceed as described in the following.

1. Press the **Menu key** and open the **voice mailbox > settings > edit announc.** menu.
2. Select the voice mailbox from the list for which you want to delete an announcement.
3. Scroll to the desired entry.
4. Tap on .
5. Tap on OK to confirm the action.

Switching the Call Information On/Off for New Messages

If call information is switched on for a new message, the subscriber will be informed when the call was received before the message is replayed.

Switching on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Press the **Menu key** and open the **voice mailbox > settings > call information** menu.
2. Select or clear the **call information** check box.
   - ☑ Switches call information on.
   - ☐ Switches call information off.
3. Tap on OK.

Switching the Separator Tone On/Off for New Messages

If the separator tone is switched on for new messages, a tone will be replayed after each message when listening to several new messages. This makes it easier to distinguish the individual messages from each other.

Switching on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Press the **Menu key** and open the **voice mailbox > settings > separator tone** menu.
2. Select or clear the **separator tone** check box.
   - ☑ Enables the separator tone.
   - ☐ Disables the separator tone.

3. Tap on OK.

Remote Access

Remote access is used to access and operate the voice mailbox from an internal telephone or from an external telephone.

Executing Remote Access

Performing this procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using a character string on an external telephone
- Using a character string on the internal telephone

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX

1. Call the voice mailbox.

   The voice mailbox accepts the call. You hear the configured announcement.

2. Dial *****.

   Note: If the querying internal telephone is the owner/user of the voice mailbox, step 3 will be omitted.

3. Enter the **user PIN** or the **PIN for remote access** and dial **#**.

   Remote access is started. You are led through the remote access menu with the help of various announcements.

4. Execute remote access by entering the following digits.

   0: Opens the Help menu.

   1: Opens the main menu.

   2: Replays new messages.

   3: Replays all of the messages.

   4: Jumps back to the previous message.

   5: Repeats the message currently being replayed.

   6: Jumps to the next message.

   7: Deletes the message currently being replayed.

8: Ends replay.

*** 10**: Disables the voice mailbox.

*** 11**: Enables the voice mailbox.

*** 20**: Permits recording and exchanging announcements.

> **Note:** The default announcement and your own announcements, if any have been recorded, will be played back. The following functions are available while your own announcements are being played back:
>
> **#** selects the currently heard announcement as active announcement.
>
> **4** jumps to the previous announcement.
>
> **5** repeats the announcement you have just heard.
>
> **6** jumps to the next announcement.
>
> **7** selects the currently heard or free announcement for changing or recording. Press # to save your announcement or * to cancel the function.

*** 30**: Disables message forwarding.

*** 31**: Enables message forwarding.

*** 70**: Deletes all messages and voice memos.

*** 99**: Records a voice memo.

Hang-up: Ends remote access.

Note: By dialling **9** while a message is being replayed, the telephone number of the caller will be displayed – provided it has been transferred. By pressing the**#** key, you can initiate a callback to the telephone number of the caller.

Switching Remote Access On/Off

Switching on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

In order to switch remote access to the voice mailbox on or off, press the **function key** configured for remote access.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **voice mailbox > functions > VMB remote access** menu.
2. Select a voice mailbox from the list.
3. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables the remote access function.

   switch off: Disables the remote access function.
4. Tap on OK.

Configuring and Operating the Function Key for Remote Access

Press the generally assigned key to switch the remote access for a voice mailbox to be selected on or off or switch it over.

Press the defined and assigned key to switch the remote access for a defined voice mailbox on or off or switch it over.

In addition, when functions are assigned on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	Remote access is enabled.
Yellow	The remote access to at least one voice mailbox has been switched off (only in case of general assignment).
Off	Remote access is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for General Remote Access

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **voice mailbox - remote access** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.
5. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:

– Save your configuration before closing.

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Defined Remote Access

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **voice mailbox - remote access defined** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.

5. In the **Number** entry field, enter the number of the voice mailbox which is to be switched via the function key.

6. In the **kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Press the key to disable the remote access.

   switch on: Press the key to enable the remote access.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the remote access on or off.

7. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Remote Access

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.

2. Press the **function key** that you would like to assign.

3. Select one of the following options:

   First level: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Second level: Keys are assigned on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **VMB rem. access** function.

5. Select the kind of key. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of keys.

   general: Press the key to enable the remote access. (No other action is required.)

   defined: Press the key to configure remote access for a selected voice mailbox.

6. Tap on and select a voice mailbox from the list.

7. Tap on and enter a name.

8. Only when the kind of key **defined** has been selected. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Press the key to disable the remote access.

   switch on: Press the key to enable the remote access.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the remote access on or off.

9. Tap on .

Message Forwarding

Message forwarding enables the voice mailbox to notify you of new messages.

Switching Message Forwarding On/Off

Switching on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

– The destination for message forwarding of the voice mailbox configured in the PBX

In order to switch message forwarding on or off, press the **function key** configured for message forwarding.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **voice mailbox > functions > VMB forwarding** menu.
2. Select a voice mailbox from the list.
3. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables message forwarding.

   switch off: Disables message forwarding.
4. Tap on OK.

Configuring and Operating the Function Key for Message Forwarding

Press the generally assigned key to switch the message forwarding for a voice mailbox to be selected on or off or switch it over.

Press the defined and assigned key to switch message forwarding for a defined voice mailbox on or off or switch it over.

In addition, when functions are assigned on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:

Green	Message forwarding is enabled.
Yellow	The message forwarding for at least one voice mailbox has been switched off (only in case of general assignment).
Off	Message forwarding is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for General Message Forwarding

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

– The destination for message forwarding of the voice mailbox configured in the PBX

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **voice mailbox - message forwarding** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.
5. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Defined Message Forwarding

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it
– The destination for message forwarding of the voice mailbox configured in the PBX

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **voice mailbox - message forwarding defined** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.
5. In the **Number** entry field, enter the number of the voice mailbox which is to be switched via the function key.
6. In the **kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Press the key to disable message forwarding.

   switch on: Press the key to enable message forwarding.

   switch over: Press the key to switch message forwarding on or off.
7. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Message Forwarding

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

– The destination for message forwarding of the voice mailbox configured in the PBX

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to assign.
3. Select one of the following options:

   First level: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Second level: Keys are assigned on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **VMB forwarding** function.
5. Select the kind of key. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of keys.

   general: Press the key to enable message forwarding. (No other action is required.)

   defined: Press the key to configure message forwarding for a selected voice mailbox.
6. Tap on and select a voice mailbox from the list.
7. Tap on and enter a name.
8. Only when the kind of key **defined** has been selected. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Press the key to disable message forwarding.

   switch on: Press the key to enable message forwarding.

   switch over: Press the key to switch message forwarding on or off.
9. Tap on .

Substitute Function

If the substitute function is switched on, the caller can be connected with the substitute instead of leaving a message on the voice mailbox. For this purpose, the caller dials "1" during the announcement or recording phase.

You have to include this information ("You can reach my substitute by dialling the digit 1...") into the announcement yourself by recording it via an own announcement.

Switching the Substitute Function On/Off

Switching on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it
– The substitute function configured in the PBX for the voice mailbox
– Recorded announcement for the voice mailbox (see instructions for the PBX)

In order to switch the substitute function on or off, press the **function key** configured for the substitute function.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **voice mailbox > functions > VMB substitute** menu.
2. Select a voice mailbox from the list.
3. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables the substitute function.

   switch off: Disables the substitute function.
4. Enter the destination number of the substitute. Possible entries:

   Up to 32 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, always enter external telephone numbers with a leading exchange line access number "0". (exception: direct exchange access).

5. Tap on OK.

Configuring and Operating the Function Key for the Substitute Function

Press the generally assigned key to switch the substitute function for a voice mailbox to be selected on or off or switch it over.

Press the defined and assigned key to switch the substitute function for a previously defined voice mailbox on or off or switch it over.

In addition, when functions are assigned on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	The substitute function is enabled.
Yellow	The substitute function for at least one voice mailbox has been switched off (only in case of general assignment).
Off	The substitute function is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for the General Substitute Function

Requirements:

– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it

– The substitute function configured in the PBX for the voice mailbox

– Recorded announcement for the voice mailbox (see instructions for the PBX)

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **voice mailbox - substitute** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.

5. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for the Defined Substitute Function

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it
– The substitute function configured in the PBX for the voice mailbox
– Recorded announcement for the voice mailbox (see instructions for the PBX)

1. Open the page **function keys > assign function keys**.

2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are assigned on the second key level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **voice mailbox - substitute defined** function.

   The current settings for assigning the key are displayed.

5. In the **Number** entry field, enter the number of the voice mailbox for which you want to configure this function.
6. In the **kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Press the key to disable the substitute function.

   switch on: Press the key to enable the substitute function.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the substitute function on or off.
7. Enter the number in the **number of substitute** entry field. Possible entries:

   Up to 32 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #
8. In the **key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for the Substitute Function

Requirements:
– Voice mailbox which is configured in the PBX and assigned to it
– The substitute function configured in the PBX for the voice mailbox
– Recorded announcement for the voice mailbox (see instructions for the PBX)

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to assign.
3. Select one of the following options:

   First level: Keys are assigned on the first key level.

   Second level: Keys are assigned on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **VMB substitute** function.
5. Select the kind of key. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of keys.

   general: Press the key to enable the substitute function. (No other action is required.)

   defined: Press the key to configure the substitute function for a selected voice mailbox.
6. Tap on and select a voice mailbox from the list.
7. Tap on and enter a name.
8. Tap on next to **VMB substitute**.
9. Enter the number of the substitute. Possible entries:

   Up to 32 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, always enter external telephone numbers with a leading exchange line access number "0". (exception: direct exchange access).

   ---
10. Only when the kind of key **defined** has been selected: Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

    switch off: Press the key to disable the substitute function.

    switch on: Press the key to enable the substitute function.

    switch over: Press the key to switch the substitute function on or off.
11. Tap on .

Settings

This section describes how to configure and manage your telephone.

Topics

– Identification (page 441)
– Protection from Unauthorised Access (page 443)
– Display and Backlight (page 448)
– Call Signalling (page 459)
– Ringtones (page 466)
– Call Charges (page 471)
– Receiver and Headset (page 473)
– Menu and Function Keys (page 478)

Identification

The telephone must be uniquely identified on the PBX.

Configuring MSN

In order for the PBX to identify the telephone, the internal telephone number (MSN) for the telephone must be entered.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using the configuration manager
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure MSN

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Basic settings**.
2. In the **Internal number**, enter the internal telephone number (MSN).

Important: Use each of the internal subscriber telephone numbers for only one of the devices.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the MSN

Requirements:
– The internal telephone number for the telephone configured on the PBX

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > def. settings > MSN**.
2. Enter the internal telephone number (MSN).

Important: Use each of the internal subscriber telephone numbers for only one of the devices.

3. Tap on OK.

Protection from Unauthorised Access

In order to prevent important settings from being changed accidentally or by unauthorised people, the telephone can be protected from unauthorised access.

When operating the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX, access to the telephone is subdivided into four authorisation levels:

- Administrator (access via admin PIN on the PBX)
- Sub-administrator (access via one of the four sub-admin PINs on the PBX)
- User (access via user PIN assigned to subscriber)
- Guests (unprotected access)

The PINs are transmitted from the PBX and cannot be changed in the telephone itself.

When operating on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB, access to the telephone is subdivided into two authorisation levels:

- User (access via user PIN)
- Guests (unprotected access)

The user PIN is configured in the telephone.

Configuring User PIN

Important: Only available when operated on the PBXs COMpact 2206 USB and COMpact 4410 USB.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone menu

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > blocking > change user PIN**.
2. Enter the user PIN and tap on OK.
3. Enter the user PIN for a second time and tap on OK.

Note: You can delete the PIN by not entering any PIN in both menus but by only tapping on OK.

Configuring a Function Lock

The functions available in the function menu and key definition menu can be blocked from unauthorised use. The display of these restricted functions in the selection list requires entering the corresponding PIN after selecting **additional** at the end of the selection list.

Note: A function key defined with a restricted function cannot be used with out entering a PIN. This means that the administrator can, for example, enable the switching on/off of a specific call forwarding configuration via the function key even though the ability to configure any number of call forwarding configurations is restricted.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Lock

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Restrictions**.
2. Click the **Telephone menu functions** tab.
3. Select one of the following options for the function to be blocked.

   No restrictions: The function is not blocked.

   Guests: Blocks the function in question from guests.

   Guests + users: Blocks the function in question from guests and users.

   Guests + users + SubAdmin: Blocks the function in question from guests, users and sub-administrators.

   If you would like to restrict all of the functions, select one of the following options under **All - restricted for**.

   No restrictions: No function is blocked.

   Guests: Blocks all functions for guests.

   Guests + users: Blocks all functions for guests and users.

   Guests + users + SubAdmin: Blocks all functions for guests, users and sub-administrators.

Further steps:

– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Lock

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > blocking > additional > function lock**.

   Note: After selecting **additional** follows entering of the corresponding PIN.

   The symbol indicates no blocking.
   The symbol indicates that guests are blocked.
   The symbol indicates that guests and users are blocked.
   The symbol indicates that guests, users and sub-administrators are blocked.

2. Select the function to be blocked.

   The menu for restricting the selected function is opened.

3. Enable one of the following options:

   Sub Admin: Blocks the function in question from guests, users and sub-administrators.

   user: Blocks the function in question from guests and users.

   guests: Blocks the function in question from guests.

   no blocking: The function is not blocked.

4. Tap on OK to end the configuration for this function.

   The modified settings are displayed, and you can select another function.

5. Tap on OK.

Configuring Settings Lock

The settings that can be selected in the settings menu can be restricted from unauthorised use. The display of these restricted settings in the selection list requires entering the corresponding PIN after selecting **additional** at the end of the selection list.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Settings Lock

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Restrictions**.
2. Click the **Telephone menu settings** tab.
3. Select one of the following options for the setting to be blocked.

   No restrictions: The setting is not blocked.

   Guests: Blocks the setting in question from guests.

   Guests + users: Blocks the setting in question from guests and users.

   Guests + users + SubAdmin: Blocks the setting in question from guests, users and sub-administrators.

   If you would like to restrict all of the settings, select one of the following options under **All - restricted for**.

   No restrictions: No settings are blocked.

   Guests: Blocks all settings for guests.

   Guests + users: Blocks all settings for guests and users.

   Guests + users + SubAdmin: Blocks all settings for guests, users and sub-administrators.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Settings Lock

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > blocking > additional > settings lock**.

   Note: After selecting **additional** follows entering of the corresponding PIN.

   The symbol indicates no blocking.
   The symbol indicates that guests are blocked.

The symbol indicates that guests and users are blocked.

The symbol indicates that guests, users and sub-administrators are blocked.

2. Select the setting to be blocked.

   The menu for blocking the selected setting is opened.

3. Enable one of the following options:

   Sub Admin: Blocks the setting in question from guests, users and sub-administrators.

   user: Blocks the setting in question from guests and users.

   guests: Blocks the setting in question from guests.

   no blocking: The setting is not blocked.

4. Tap on OK to end the configuration for this setting.

   The modified settings are displayed, and you can select another setting.

5. Tap on OK.

Display and Backlight

Configuring Language on Telephone

This setting specifies the language used on the telephone display.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Language on the Telephone

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Basic settings**.
2. Select the desired language in the **Display language** list field.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Language on the Telephone

1. Press the **Menu** key and open the menu **settings > def. settings > language**.

   Note: To open the **language** menu, you can also press the **menu key**, **#** and **0** in that order.

2. Select the desired display language.

Configuring Display Backlight

The display backlight on the telephone can be adapted according to individual work place requirements.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Display Backlight

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Display**.
2. In the **Display backlight** list field, select one of the following options:

   automatically: As soon as a key is pressed, the receiver is picked up or the telephone is called, the backlight is switched on (brightness max.) and remains in this state afterwards for short transitional period. Otherwise, the backlight remains on a standby level (brightness min.).

   Permanently switched on during a call: In addition to the times available in the **automatically** selection, the backlight remains switched on for the entire duration of a call and afterwards for a short transitional period.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Display Backlight

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > display > display light**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   on during call: In addition to the times available in the **automatically** selection, the backlight remains switched on for the entire duration of a call and afterwards for a short transitional period.

   automatically: As soon as a key is pressed, the receiver is picked up or the telephone is called, the backlight is switched on (brightness max.) and remains in this state afterwards for short transitional period. Otherwise, the backlight remains on a standby level (brightness min.).

Configuring Brightness

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– Enabled display backlight

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > display > brightness (min)**.
2. Tap on − and + to configure the desired basic brightness on the display while the telephone is in the idle state.
3. Tap on OK.
4. Select **brightness (max.)**.
5. Tap on − and + to configure the desired brightness on the display for calls during operation.
6. Tap on OK.

Switching the Inverse Display View On/Off

If the inverse display view is switched on, the text on the display is dark and the background is light-coloured.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Inverse Display View On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Display**.
2. Select or clear the **Inverse display view** check box.
   - ☑ Enables the inverse display view function on the display.
   - ☐ Disables the inverse display view function on the display.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Inverse Display View On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > display > inverse view**.
2. Select or clear the **inverse view** check box.

   Enables the inverse display view function on the display.

   Disables the inverse display view function on the display.
3. Tap on OK.

Configuring Time Format

This setting specifies the format in which time is depicted on the display.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Time Format

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Display**.
2. In the **Time format** list field, select one of the following options:

   HH.MM: Selects the time format in the order of hour, minute separated by a point.

   HH:MM: Selects the time format in the order of hour, minute separated by a colon.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Time Format

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > display > time format**.
2. Select one of the following options:

HH:MM: Selects the time format in the order of hour, minute separated by a colon.

HH.MM: Selects the time format in the order of hour, minute separated by a point.

Configuring Date Format

The date format selected here is displayed, for example, in the caller and calls lists.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Date Format

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Display**.
2. In the **Date format** list field, select one of the following options:

   DD.MM.YY: Selects the date format in the order of day, month, year separated by points.

   DD/MM/YY: Selects the date format in the order of day, month, year separated by slashes.

   DD-MM-YY: Selects the date format in the order of day, month, year separated by hyphens.

   YY-MM-DD: Selects the date format in the order of year, month, day separated by hyphens.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Date Format

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > display > date format**.
2. Select one of the following options:

DD.MM.YY: Selects the date format in the order of day, month, year separated by points.

DD/MM/YY: Selects the date format in the order of day, month, year separated by slashes.

DD-MM-YY: Selects the date format in the order of day, month, year separated by hyphens.

YY-MM-DD: Selects the date format in the order of year, month, day separated by hyphens.

Calibrating the Touchscreen

If the touchscreen of the telephone is reacting imprecisely when touched, you have to calibrate it.

You can calibrate the touchscreen as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > display > calibration**.

   A cross appears in the top left corner of the display.

2. Tap on the centre of the cross.

   A cross appears in the bottom right corner of the display.

3. Tap on the centre of the cross.

4. Tap on OK.

Select Wallpaper

The factory settings of the telephone already include a variety of wallpapers.

The selection can be made as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

*– For your own wallpapers: An SD card with *.jpg files in the CF1400\PICTURES directory inserted in the SD slot*

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > display > wallpaper**.
2. Tap on ← or → to select the desired wallpaper.
3. Tap on OK to accept the selection.

Transferring Wallpapers from PC to SD Card

You can add your own wallpapers to the selection already included in the factory settings. Pictures in the *.jpg file format with 320 x 240 pixels can be used as wallpapers. To this end, they must be saved in the CF1400\PICTURES directory of the SD card.

The transmission can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:

– SD card inserted into slot

You would like to transfer wallpapers saved on your computer to the SD card on your telephone. Proceed as described in the following.

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Data exchange**.

   When you open this page for the first time, a dialogue for reading out the directory structure on the SD card opens.

   a) Click **Yes**.

   The directory structure on the SD card is read out and then displayed under **SD card**.

2. Under **PC**, select the file in the directory tree that you would like to transfer to the SD card.

   Note:

   You can also transfer multiple files to the SD card at the same time.

   If you let the cursor hover over a file for a few seconds, a tool tip automatically opens with information about the corresponding file.

3. Select the CF1400/PICTURES directory in the directory tree under **SD card**.

4. Click >>.

   The data is transferred to the SD card.

Transferring Wallpapers from SD Card to PC

The transmission can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:
– SD card inserted into slot

You would like to transfer a wallpaper saved on the SD card on your telephone to your PC. Proceed as described in the following.

Note: Please bear in mind that the wallpapers supplied by Auerswald in the factory settings are protected by licences.

---

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Data exchange**.

   When you open this page for the first time, a dialogue for reading out the directory structure on the SD card opens.

   a) Click **Yes**.

      The directory structure on the SD card is read out and then displayed under **SD card**.

2. Select the file in the directory tree under **SD card** that you would like to transfer to the PC.

   Note:

   You can also transfer multiple files to the PC at the same time.

   If you let the cursor hover over a file for a few seconds, a tool tip automatically opens with information about the corresponding file.

   ---

3. Select the target directory in the directory tree under **PC**, into which the file from the SD card is to be copied.

   Note:

   If you would like to refresh the directory tree under **PC**, click .

If you would like to create a new directory in the directory tree under **PC**, click .

If you would like to select a different root directory in the directory tree under **PC**, click . Select the desired directory and click **Open** (this text is dependent on the operating system used).

4. Click <<.

   The data is transferred to the PC.

Delete Wallpapers from SD Card/PC

Deleting can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:
– SD card inserted into slot

You would like to delete a wallpaper that is saved on your SD card or PC. Proceed as described in the following.

1. Open the page **Answering machine > Data exchange**.

   When you open this page for the first time, a dialogue for reading out the directory structure on the SD card opens.

   a) Click **Yes**.

   The directory structure on the SD card is read out and then displayed under **SD card**.

2. Select the file that you would like to delete in the directory tree under **SD card**/**PC**.

   Note: You can also delete multiple files at one time.

3. Click .

4. Click **Yes**.

   The data is deleted.

Casing LED

Configuring the Casing LED

The casing LED provides information about the telephone's operating mode and missed calls.

If you find the LED signalling disruptive or bothersome, it can be switched off. A variety of settings are possible:

LED Signalling during Configuration: Show Alerting, Calls and Entries in the Caller List

Red	The telephone is on a call.
Red (blinking)	New entries in the caller list are present.
Red (flashing) + alternating pauses)	The telephone is being called.
Off	The telephone is neither being called, nor is it on a call, and there are no new messages.

LED Signalling during Configuration: Show Alerting and Calls

Red	The telephone is on a call.
Red (flashing) + alternating pauses)	The telephone is being called.
Off	The telephone is neither being called, nor is it on a call.

LED Signalling during Configuration: LED Always off

Off	LED is switched off.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Casing LED

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Signalling/ringer**.

2. In the list **Casing LED**, select one of the following options:

   Show Alerting, Calls and Entries in the Caller List: Indicates alerting, calls and entries in the caller list.

   Show Alerting and Calls: Indicates alerting and calls.

   LED always off: Switches off LED signalling.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Casing LED

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > signalling > message LED**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   Call,message: Indicates alerting, calls and entries in the caller list.

   Call, acc.call: Indicates alerting and calls.

   Always off: Switches off LED signalling.
3. Tap on OK.

Call Signalling

The system telephone can signal incoming calls as follows:

- Ring signal (the telephone rings with a configured ringtone)
- Display message (text)
- Display backlight
- Display backlight with flashing signal

Switching Ring Signal On/Off

If the ring signal is enabled, calls are acoustically signalled by a ring signal. If you don't want your environment to be disturbed by the ringer on the telephone, you can switch off the ring signal.

This function is different than the do-not-disturb function on the PBX in that calls are still possible. However, they are no longer signalled acoustically but rather visually.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Ring Signal On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Signalling/ringer**.
2. Select or clear the **Ring signal** check box.
   - ☑ Enables the ring signal.
   - ☐ Disables the ring signal.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Ring Signal On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.

2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **ringer tone** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of switching. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Press the key to disable the ring signal.

   switch on: Press the key to enable the ring signal.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the ring signal on or off.
6. Tap on OK.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Ring Signal

Press the key to switch the ring signal on or off or to switch it over.

Press the key during an incoming call to switch the ring signal on or off for this call or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Off	The ring signal is enabled.
Red	The ring signal is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Ring Signal

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Ring signal** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Press the key to disable the ring signal.

   switch on: Press the key to enable the ring signal.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the ring signal on or off.
6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Ring Signal

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **ringer tone** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Select the kind of switching. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Press the key to disable the ring signal.

   switch on: Press the key to enable the ring signal.

   switch over: Press the key to switch the ring signal on or off.

6. Tap on OK.

Switching Flashing Display Backlight for Call Signalling On/Off

If you don't want your environment to be disturbed by the ringer on the telephone, you can signal calls instead by having the display backlight flash (in addition to the other visual signals). Depending on the brightness in the room, this can be a highly noticeable visual signal.

Warning: Certain blinking frequencies can possibly trigger epileptic seizures. Those suffering from or in danger of epileptic seizures should therefore avoid using this function.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Call Signalling by Flashing Display Backlight On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Signalling/ringer**.

2. Select or clear the **Call signal/light** check box.

☑ Enables call signalling by a flashing display backlight.

☐ Disables call signalling by a flashing display backlight.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Call Signalling by Flashing Display Backlight On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > call signal/light**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables call signalling by a flashing display backlight.

   switch off: Disables call signalling by a flashing display backlight.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Call Signalling by Flashing Display Backlight

Press the key while in the telephone's idle state to switch call signalling by the flashing display backlight on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Off	Call signalling by a flashing display backlight is disabled.
Red	Call signalling by a flashing display backlight is enabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Call Signalling by Flashing Display Backlight

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.

2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Call signal/light** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Press the key to switch call signalling by a flashing display backlight off.

   switch on: Press the key to switch call signalling by a flashing display backlight on.

   switch over: Press the key to switch call signalling by a flashing display backlight on or off.

6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Call Signalling by Flashing Display Backlight

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.

2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.

3. Select one of the following options:

first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **call signal/light** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Select the kind of switching. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Press the key to switch call signalling by a flashing display backlight off.

   switch on: Press the key to switch call signalling by a flashing display backlight on.

   switch over: Press the key to switch call signalling by a flashing display backlight on or off.

6. Tap on OK.

Ringtones

Determining Different Types of Calls

There are 20 different ringtones available to differentiate between types of calls. You can use COMfortel Set **Answering machine > Data exchange** to add additional audio files (*.wav) to these ringtones.

The ringtones can be assigned to different kinds of calls, callers or call targets. You can make the assignments depending on what information you think is the most important. Configure the settings as follows:

- If you would like to differentiate between the different kinds of calls by using different ringtones, configure the corresponding settings using the telephone or using COMfortel Set. The following kinds of calls are available for this:
  - Alarm calls
  - External calls
  - Internal calls
  - Call for group (a call directed to a group)
  - InterCom calls
  - External callback calls
  - Internal callback calls
  - Scheduled calls
  - Door calls
  - Call deblocker calls (calls enabled despite do-not-disturb)
  - Wake-up calls
  - Others
- If you would like to differentiate between different callers using different ringtones, enter the telephone numbers of these people in a local telephone book and assign the contact in question a specific ringtone (the prerequisite for this function is that the caller transmits his telephone number).
- If you would like to be notified, using different ringtones, which of your external telephone numbers the caller dialled, configure the corresponding settings using COMfortel Set.

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

- If you would like to be notified, using different ringtones, which of your groups is being called by the caller, configure the corresponding settings using COMfortel Set.

As external, internal and door terminal calls can be affected by more than one of these four settings, these types of calls are signaled based on a predetermined sequence (priority list). When this is done, the caller is always identified first. If no specific ringtone has been configured for the caller, the external telephone number or group telephone number dialled by the caller is checked. If no specific ringtone has been configured for this either, the ringtone of the kind of call is used.

Priority List for External Calls

1. The ringtone defined in the telephone book, in as far as the caller can be identified as a telephone book entry
2. For the ringtone configured for the call type call deblocker, in as much as the caller can be identified even when he has do-not-disturb enabled as a part of a call deblocker
3. For a ringtone configured for a certain external telephone number, in as much as the telephone number was dialled by the caller
4. For the ringtone configured for a certain group telephone number, in as much as the group is called
5. For the ringtone configured for a certain call type group calling, in as much as a non-specified group is called
6. For the ringtone for the call type external calls

Priority List for Internal Calls

1. The ringtone defined in the telephone book, in as far as the caller can be identified as a telephone book entry
2. For the ringtone configured for a certain group telephone number, in as much as the group is called
3. For the ringtone configured for a certain call type group calling, in as much as a non-specified group is called
4. For the ringtone for the call type internal calls

Priority List for Door Terminal Calls

1. The ringtone defined in the telephone book, in as far as the door terminal can be identified as a telephone book entry
2. For the ringtone for the call type door call

Configuring Ringtones

You have the option of assigning the several call types each a specific ringtone using the telephone.

In addition to making call type-dependent assignments, COMfortel Set can also be used to configure which ringtone to assign to each of 10 separate external telephone numbers or groups depending on the number.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure Call Type-dependent Ringtones

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Signalling/ringer**.
2. Click the **Ringtones (call type-dependent)** tab.
3. If you would like to add your own ringtones to the ringtone list fields, click next to **Read ringtones (*.wav) from SD card**.

   The ringtones on the SD card are read out and added to the list fields for the various call types.

   Note:

   Adding your own ringtones is only possible on a telephone with an SD/ SDHC card inserted.

   To upload your own ringtones to the SD card, open the page **Answering machine > Data exchange** and load any audio files (*.wav) available in the RINGTONE directory on the SD card.

   ---

4. Select the desired ringtone from the list field of call types in question.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using COMfortel Set to Configure Number-dependent Ringtones

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Signalling/ringer**.

2. Click the **Ringtones (number-dependent)** tab.
3. In the **Group number 1** to **Group number 10** entry field, enter the telephone numbers of the group and select the desired ringtone from the list field.
4. In the **External telephone numbers 1** to **External telephone numbers 10** entry field, enter each of your external telephone numbers and select the desired ringtone in the list field.

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure Ringtones and Volume

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > signalling > ringtone**.
2. Select the desired call type.

   You hear the currently configured ringtone. The associated name is shown in the display.
3. Select the desired ringtone.

   You hear the displayed ringtone to see if you like it.
4. Select the desired volume by pressing the plus/minus key.
5. Tap on OK.

   You now have option of configuring the ringtone for another call type.

Changing Ringer Volume Automatically

You can increase and decrease the ringer volume on the telephone automatically. The telephone starts to ring at the volume you configured and increases/decreases this every 5 seconds by one level until it reaches the maximum/minimal volume.

The change can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Change Ringer Volume Automatically

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Signalling/ringer**.
2. Under **Automatic change of the ringer volume**, select one of the following options:

   Constant ringer volume: Selects a steady volume during the entire calling phase.

   Increase the ringer volume automatically: Selects an automatic increase in the volume during the calling phase.

   Reduce the ringer volume automatically: Selects an automatic decrease in the volume during the calling phase.

   Single tone: Selects a single quiet tone instead of the ringtones configured.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Change Ringer Volume Automatically

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > signalling > ringer volume**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   steady: Selects a steady volume during the entire calling phase.

   autom.increase: Selects an automatic increase in the volume during the calling phase.

   auto-reduction: Selects an automatic decrease in the volume during the calling phase.

   single ringtone: Selects a single quiet tone instead of the ringtones configured.

Call Charges

To calculate call charges, the currency of the country as well as the cost per call unit must be configured in COMfortel Set.

Configuring Currency

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Basic settings**.
2. In the **Currency (max. 3 characters)** entry field, enter the currency for the charge function on the telephone that should be used. Possible entries:

   Up to 3 digits

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Configuring Cost per Call Unit

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Basic settings**.
2. In the **Cost per call unit (1-9999 currency subunits)** entry field, enter the cost per call unit. Possible entries:

   Up to 4 digits

   Digits, for example, **6** for 6 cent

Note: If you configure your telephone as room telephone, the value for cost per call unit should match the value configured in the PBX. Otherwise misun-

derstandings might occur regarding final invoice because the value configured in the PBX is used for calculating the cost of calls.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Receiver and Headset

Adjusting Receiver Volume

Whenever necessary, the microphone volume of the receiver can be increased or decreased.

The adjustment can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > def. settings > receiver volume**.
2. Tap on − and + to configure the desired microphone volume.
3. Tap on OK.

Switching Headset Operation On/Off

If you have connected a headset to your system telephone and selected it, you can switch between receiver and headset operation.

The telephone detects the connection of a headset and, in this case, the telephone switches the headset operation on. The telephone detects the disconnection of a headset and, in this case, the telephone switches the headset operation off.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

In order to switch headset operation on and off, press the function key configured for a headset.

Alternatively, proceed as described below.

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > headset**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   switch on: Enables headset operation.

   switch off: Enables headset operation.

Further steps:
– If required, switch the automatic call acceptance on.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Headset Operation

Press the key to switch headset operation on or off or to switch it over.

In addition, when functions are defined on the first key level, the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Green	Headset operation is enabled.
Off	Headset operation is disabled.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Headset Operation

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click one of the following tabs:

   Level 1: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   Level 2: Keys are defined on the second key level.
3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.
4. Select the **Headset** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.
5. In the **Kind of switching** list field, select one of the following options:

   switch off: Enables headset operation.

   switch on: Enables headset operation.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches headset operation on or off.

6. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Headset Operation

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select one of the following options:

   first level: Keys are defined on the first key level.

   second level: Keys are defined on the second key level.

   The list of available functions is displayed.
4. Select the **headset** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.
5. Select the kind of switching. Tap on to switch over between the different kinds of switching.

   switch off: Enables headset operation.

   switch on: Enables headset operation.

   switch over: Pressing the key switches headset operation on or off.
6. Tap on OK.

Switching Headset Ringing On/Off

During headset operation (headset switched on), three types of call signalling are possible:

1. Ringing through the loud speaker (as for receiver operation)

2. Ringing through the loud speaker + a short attention tone on the headset

3. Short attention tone on the headset

For the second and third operating mode, headset ringing must be switched on as described here. For the third operating mode, the ringer must also be switched off.

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Switch Headset Ringing On/Off

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > Headset**.
2. Select or clear the **Headset ringing** check box.
   - ☑ Enables the headset ringer.
   - ☐ Disables the headset ringer.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Switch Headset Ringing On/Off

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > headset > headset ringer**.
2. Select or clear the **headset ringer** check box.
   - Enables the headset ringer.
   - Disables the headset ringer.
3. Tap on OK.

Adjusting Headset Volume

Whenever necessary, the headset volume can be used to adjust the microphone amplifier on the connected headset upwards (if your communication partner cannot understand you) or downwards (if speech is distorted).

The adjustment can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > headset > headset volume**.
2. Tap on − and + to configure the desired microphone volume.
3. Tap on OK.

Menu and Function Keys

Restricting Menu Selection

You can adapt the function menu to your own needs. If you would like to only use some of the functions available, you can hide the remaining functions in order to shorten the menu selection. Hiding applies only to the function menu. If the functions in question are also available over a different path, for example, via the key definition menu or an already defined key, this remains available.

The restriction can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > user settings > menu definition**.
2. Enable or disable the desired function.

   The function in question is shown on the display.

   The function in question is not shown on the display.
3. Tap on OK.

Configuring Accessibility of Second Key Level

The programmable function keys can each be defined twice (on two levels). Here, you configure how the second level of the function keys should be operated. The variant **Second level via shift key** is always enabled. If you would like to use this, you must define one of your function keys with the shift function. The variant **Second level via double-click (300 ms)** can be disabled if it is not needed.

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure Accessibility of Second Key Level

1. Open the page **Settings/functions > User settings**.
2. Select or clear the **Second-level function via double keypress** check box.
   - ☑ Enables pressing the key twice to access the second level.
   - ☐ Disables pressing the key twice to access the second level.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure Accessibility of Second Key Level

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > user settings > keys 2nd level**.
2. Select or clear the **double click** check box.
   - Enables pressing the key twice to access the second level.
   - Disables pressing the key twice to access the second level.
3. Tap on OK.

Configuring and Operating Function Key for Shift

Press the key to access the second key level for a few seconds.

In addition the status of the function is indicated by the corresponding LED.

LED signalling on the key:	
Red	The second key level is accessible.
Off	The first key level is accessible.

The configuration can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set
- Using the telephone

Using COMfortel Set to Configure the Function Key for Shift

1. Open the page **Function keys > Assign function keys**.
2. Click **Level 1**.

   Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level. The second level is then blocked. If a function has been assigned to the second level, it is deleted.

3. Right-click the function key you want to assign.

   A function selection dialogue opens.

4. Select the **Shift** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are displayed.

5. In the **Key name** entry field, enter a name for the key. Possible entries:

   Up to 16 digits

   Digits and characters

   Clicking automatically enters the default name in the entry field.

   Note: The key name is used for printing the label.

Further steps:
– Save your configuration before closing.

Using the Telephone to Configure the Function Key for Shift

1. Press the **menu key** and open the **define keys** menu.
2. Press the **function key** that you would like to define.
3. Select **first level**.

   Important: Configuring this function is only possible on the first level. The second level is then blocked. If a function has been assigned to the second level, it is deleted.

The list of available functions is displayed.

4. Select the **shift** function.

   The current settings for defining the key are shown on the display.

5. Tap on OK.

Exchanging or Moving Function Keys

The definition of individual function keys can be exchanged or moved.

The exchanging/moving procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

1. Open the page **Function keys > Exchange/move**.
2. Click the function key field that you would like to move or exchange.

   The field is selected.

3. Click one of the following options:

   Exchange: Exchanges the selected function key after clicking the target field.

   Move: Moves the selected function key after clicking the target field.

4. Click the target field to which the selected function key should be moved or with which the function key should be exchanged.

Further steps:
– Back up your configuration before you leave the PC programme.

Service and Maintenance

This section describes useful service functions, among other things. This includes deleting, saving and restoring data in the case of a malfunction and the need to exchange the telephone or PBX.

Topics

– Firmware Update (page 483)
– Data Backup (page 488)
– Formatting SD Card (page 494)
– Selecting a PBX (page 495)
– Initiating PBX Synchronisation (page 496)
– Deleting Data (page 497)
– Diagnostic Functions (page 499)

Firmware Update

When firmware is updated, errors are corrected and new features are installed. To do this, the device establishes a connection to a server in order to download the most current firmware (the device settings remain intact). Except for the charges for the required server connection, the update is free of charge.

Firmware Update Variants

There are various options for carrying out a firmware update. The variants are differentiated as follows:

Manual Firmware Update

When a manual firmware update is carried out, a firmware file (*.rom) is uploaded into the telephone using COMfortel Set thereby saving the new firmware in the telephone.

Manual Firmware Update from the SD Card

When a manual firmware update from the SD card is carried out, a firmware file (*.rom) is uploaded into the telephone from the SD card thereby saving the new firmware in the telephone.

Instant Firmware Update via the Update Server

When an instant firmware update is activated via the update server, the firmware update is initiated automatically. After a connection to the update server has been established, the server sends the latest firmware to telephone.

Initiating Manual Firmware Update

Initiation can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:

– An existing PC connection configured correctly in COMfortel Set to a PC interface on the PBX or another connected system telephone

– Knowledge of the required PIN

– The firmware file (.rom) saved on the hard drive*

Note: You can find the required firmware file on the Internet (see **www.auerswald.de** under **Service > Products > COMfortel 1200/1400/ 1600/2600 > Download**).

---

1. Open the menu **Service > Write firmware into the telephone...**.

   A file selection dialogue opens.

2. Select the firmware file (*.rom) you want and click **Open** (this text is dependent on the operating system used).

   The **Connection routes** dialogue with the devices connected via the interface configured above opens.

3. Select the telephone on which you would like to save the firmware and click **OK**.

   The **PIN entry** dialogue opens.

   Note: For operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX access to the telephone is only possible via the 6-digit PIN assigned in the PBX. You need to first select which PIN you would like to enter based on the authority level: the Admin PIN, one of the subadmin PINs or the user PIN that belongs to the telephone.

   ---

4. Enter the associated PIN and click **OK**.

   The firmware is saved on the telephone. This may take a while.

Further steps:

*– In order to use new features after a firmware update, you normally need a new version of the Operation Guide. This is available on the Internet (see **www.auerswald.de** under **Service > Products > Telephones > COMfortel 1200/1400/1600/2600 > Download/Documentation**).*

– In order to use the new features after a firmware update of the telephone, an update of the PBX firmware is often necessary (see instructions for the PBX).

Initiating Instant Firmware Update via Update Server

Important: Only available for operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX. On the other PBXs a manual firmware update can be performed instead.

Initiation can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– The PBX connected to broadband Internet access

– The address of the update server configured in the PBX

– A DNS server and, if necessary, an HTTP proxy server configured in the PBX

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > synchronisation > firmware update**.
2. Tap on OK.

   The firmware update and a reboot are performed. After this, a message appears in the display indicating whether the update was successful.
3. Tap on OK.

Further steps:

– Once you have carried out the firmware update, you can distribute the new firmware version from this telephone to all the other system telephones COMfortel 1200/1400/1600/2600 connected to the PBX. If there are system telephones of a different model, an additional manual firmware update has to be done.

*– In order to use new features after a firmware update, you normally need a new version of the Operation Guide. This is available on the Internet (see **www.auerswald.de** under **Service > Products > Telephones > COMfortel 1200/1400/1600/2600 > Download/Documentation**).*

– In order to use the new features after a firmware update of the telephone, an update of the PBX firmware is often necessary (see instructions for the PBX).

Distributing Firmware

A new version of firmware can be distributed from a system telephone to all of the other system telephones COMfortel 1200/1400/1600/2600 connected to the PBX.

The distribution can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– Existing new firmware on the distributing system telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > synchronisation > distr. firmware > immediately**.

   The firmware is distributed. During the distribution process, **Server Mode** is displayed on the display panel of the distributing system telephone. It is not possible to use the system telephone during this process.

Saving Firmware as File on PC

The saving procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:

– An existing PC connection configured correctly in COMfortel Set to a PC interface on the PBX or another connected system telephone

– Knowledge of the required PIN

1. Open the menu **Service > Read firmware from the telephone...**.

   A file location dialogue opens.

2. Select the directory in which you would like to save the file.

3. Enter a name for the *.rom file and click **Save** (this text is dependent on the operating system used).

   The **Connection routes** dialogue with the devices connected via the interface configured above opens.

4. Select the telephone whose firmware you would like to read and click **OK**.

The **PIN entry** dialogue opens.

Note: For operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX access to the telephone is only possible via the 6-digit PIN assigned in the PBX. You need to first select which PIN you would like to enter based on the authority level: the Admin PIN, one of the subadmin PINs or the user PIN that belongs to the telephone.

---

5. Enter the associated PIN and click **OK**.

   The firmware is read out the telephone and saved on the PC. This may take a while.

Data Backup

During a data backup, a backup file is created either automatically or manually. This file contains the configuration and/or other data and settings for the telephone. The areas to be backed up can be configured separately.

Data Backup on PC

During data backup on a PC, a backup file containing telephone data is created and saved on the PC using COMfortel Set. If necessary, this backup file can be uploaded back into the same system telephone or to another. The required areas (for example, configuration or telephone book) can be selected. The following areas can be selected:

- MSN (your own internal number)
- Configuration
  - Settings (settings configured in the settings menu (except blocking))
  - Functions (settings configured in the functions menu)
  - Function keys (function key definitions)
  - Scheduled call list (entries in the scheduled call list)
  - Specific information (for example, charges for last call, charge totals)
- Ringtones/melodies (customised ringtones)
- Local telephone book (entries in the local telephone book)
- Answering machine settings (settings configured in the answering machine menu)
- Call list (entries in the call list)
- Caller list (entries in the caller list)
- Redial list (entries in the redial list)

Backing up Current Data in a File on the PC

The backup can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:

– An existing PC connection configured correctly in COMfortel Set to a PC interface on the PBX or another connected system telephone

– Knowledge of the required PIN

1. Open the menu **Service > Create backup file...**.

   The **Connection routes** dialogue with the devices connected via the interface configured above opens.

2. Select the telephone whose firmware you would like to read out and click **OK**.

   The **PIN entry** dialogue opens.

   Note: For operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX, creating a backup file for the telephone is only possible using a 6-digit admin PIN assigned in the PBX.

   ---

3. Enter the associated PIN and click **OK**.

   The data is read out from the telephone. This may take a while.

   A file location dialogue opens.

4. Select the directory in which you would like to save the file.

5. Enter a name for the *.cfi file and click **Save** (this text is dependent on the operating system used).

Saving Data Backups on PC to Telephone

The saving procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using COMfortel Set

Requirements:

– An existing PC connection configured correctly in COMfortel Set to a PC interface on the PBX or another connected system telephone

– Knowledge of the required PIN

– Backup file (.cfi) on the hard disk*

1. Open the menu **Service > Accept backup data...**.

   A file selection dialogue opens.

2. Select the backup file (*.cfi) you want and click **Open** (this text is dependent on the operating system used).

   The **Connection routes** dialogue with the devices connected via the interface configured above opens.

3. Select the telephone on which you would like to save the backup file and click **OK**.

   The **PIN entry** dialogue opens.

   Note: For operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX, saving a backup file is only possible using the 6-digit admin PIN assigned in the PBX.

   ---

4. Enter the associated PIN and click **OK**.

   A dialogue for selecting the data to be transferred opens.

5. Select or clear the check box for the files to be transferred.

   ☑ The corresponding data of the backup file is saved on the telephone.

   ☐ The corresponding data of the backup file is not saved on the telephone.

   a) When the check box **MSN (own internal number)** has been selected: you may enter another MSN in the **MSN (own internal number)** entry field. This MSN is then be saved on the telephone instead of the MSN in the backup file.

   b) If one or more of the check boxes **Calls list**, **Caller list** and/or **Redial list** are selected: Enter the corresponding PIN in the **PIN of the backup file** entry field.

   Note: For operation on the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX, it is only possible to save the lists using the 6-digit user PIN assigned in the PBX.

   ---

6. Select or clear the **Delete not selected areas?** check box.

   ☑ Data that is not to be saved on the telephone and which is marked with an asterisk (*) are deleted from the target telephone.

   ☐ Data that is not to be saved on the telephone remains on the destination telephone.

7. Click **OK**.

   The backup data is saved on the telephone. This may take a while.

   Note: If the destination telephone has fewer resources than the source telephone, the corresponding data (for example, telephone book, ringtones) cannot be transferred.

Data Backup to SD Card

Note: Data backup to the SD card is only possible on a COMfortel 1400 with an microSD/SDHC card inserted.

The backup function can be used to either manually or automatically back up the telephone data on the telephone SD card.

A maximum of 14 complete or partial backups can be saved on the SD card. If this number is exceeded, the oldest backup is overwritten.

A directory for each backup is created on the SD card; a file is saved for every partial backup. The files can be backed up from the SD card to a PC.

Instead of a total backup of the telephone, a partial area can be selected for backup. The following areas can be selected:

- Answering machine (settings configured in the answering machine menu)
- Settings (settings configured in the settings menu (except blocking))
- Functions (settings configured in the functions menu)
- Function keys (function key definitions)
- Ringtones (customised ringtones)
- Lists (entries in the caller, calls and redial list)
- Blocking (blocking settings configured in the settings menu)
- Local telephone book (entries in the local telephone book)
- Scheduled call list (entries in the scheduled call list)

Configuring Areas for Data Backup on SD Card

The configuration can be made as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– SD card inserted into slot

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > Backup > configuration**.
2. Select or clear the check box for the areas in question.

The area in question becomes a part of the data backup.

The area in question does not become a part of the data backup.

3. Tap on OK.

Backing up Current Data on SD Card

The backup can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– SD card inserted into slot

- Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > backup > CF1400 -> SD**.

  The data is backed up in the **BACKUP** directory on the SD card.

Saving SD Card Data Backups on Telephone

The SD card data also contain the MSN. They can be saved on the telephone with or without the MSN.

The saving procedure can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:
– SD card inserted into slot

1. Proceed as follows:

   - If you also want to save the MSN on the telephone, press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > Backup > SD -> CF1400**.
   - If you want to save the data on the telephone without the MSN, press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > Backup > w/o MSN -> CF**.

   The date and time of the data backup are displayed.

2. Select the desired data backup and tap on OK.

   The data is saved on the telephone.

Switching Regular Automatic Data Backup On/Off

If automatic data backup is switched on, data will be backed up every day at midnight (as soon as the telephone goes into the idle state).

Switching this on/off can be done as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– SD card inserted into slot

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > Backup > automatic** .
2. Select or clear the **automatic** check box.

   Enables automatic data backup.

   Disables automatic data backup.
3. Tap on OK.

Formatting SD Card

The Formatting can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and enter **#206** via the keypad.
2. Tap on OK to confirm the action.

Selecting a PBX

The configuration of the telephone is dependent on the PBX that it is run on. In order to preconfigure a telephone for operation in another PBX (for example, for service calls), configure the system to be valid ahead of time. Ignore the error message and configure the desired presettings using the COMfortel Set. If you select another PBX instead of COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX (or vice versa), the existing configuration is irrevocably deleted.

The selection can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > synchronisation > select PBX**.
2. Select the desired PBX.

   The telephone restarts.

Note: If the wrong PBX is selected, this is detected and an error message is displayed. If the setting for a wrong PBX is made on purpose for service reasons, the error message must be ignored.

Initiating PBX Synchronisation

If necessary, you can initiate a complete data synchronisation with the PBX.

Initiation can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

    - Press the **menu key** and open the menu **settings > synchronisation > sync. with PBX**.

      Data synchronisation is performed with the PBX.

Deleting Data

You have the option of deleting individual pieces of data saved in the telephone. This includes resetting the telephone back to factory settings as well as deleting charges and personal data.

Restoring Factory Setting

The restoration can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and enter **#201** via the keypad.
2. Tap on OK to confirm the action.

> **Note:** When operated on one of the PBXs COMpact 3000 analogue/ISDN/ VoIP, COMpact 5010 VoIP, COMpact 5020 VoIP, COMpact 5000/R and COMmander 6000/R/RX, the PINs remain because the PINs of the PBX are used. When operated on one of the other PBXs the user PIN will be deleted.

Further steps:
– Put the telephone back into operation. If necessary, refer to the commissioning instructions.
– Create a new configuration or reinstall the previously saved configuration in the telephone.

Deleting Charges

The total charges accumulated since the last operation are displayed in the **Information** menu. In order to view the charge expenses accumulated during specified time intervals, you can delete the total charges accumulated from time to time. If you would like to prevent anyone from seeing the charges for your last call, you can also delete that entry.

Deleting can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > del.call charge**.

2. Select one of the following options:

   most recent call: Deletes the charges of the last call.

   call charge total: Deletes all of the charges accumulated so far.

3. Tap on OK to confirm the action.

Note: Neither the total charges recorded in the PBX nor the call data sets are affected by the delete operation.

Deleting Personal Data

You can delete your personal data, for example, telephone numbers, messages and settings based on the function.

Deleting can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **functions > delete data**.

2. Select one of the following options:

   caller list Deletes all of the entries in the caller list.

   calls list: Deletes all of the entries in the calls list.

   redial list: Deletes all of the entries in the redial list.

   phone book: Deletes all of the entries in the telephone book on the telephone.

   function keys: Deletes all of the function keys that are not blocked.

   scheduled call list: Deletes all of the entries in the scheduled call list.

   TAM list: Deletes all of the entries in the answering machine list.

   TAM voice memo: Deletes all of the entries in the list of voice memos.

   all: Deletes all of the data listed here.

3. Tap on OK to confirm the action.

Diagnostic Functions

Diagnostic functions can be used to carry out the following tests:

- Line check (BERT)
- Determining the services available in the PBX
- Checking the quality of the SD card

Performing Line Check (BERT)

The line check can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– Internal phone number (not used by any telephone) additionally configured in the PBX at the associated S_0 port

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **diagnosis > ISDN > line test**.
2. Select one of the following options:

   internal: Performs the line check over the PBX.

   external: Performs the line check over the public exchange.

   Important: To test a line over the public exchange, the external line to be tested must be a classic ISDN connection. A line check via analogue, VoIP or NGN lines will result in an error message, which does not mean that these connections are defective.

3. Only when the option **external** is selected: Under **destination number**, enter your own external number, including provider area code, through which the telephone can be reached. Possible entries:

   Up to 40 digits

   Digits and the characters * and #

   Important: Enter telephone numbers exactly as when dialling, for example, external telephone numbers always with a leading exchange line access number. (exception: direct exchange access). The default exchange line access number on the PBX is "0" in the factory settings; however, this can be

changed for several PBXs (see instructions for the PBX).

4. Under **MSN/name outb.** enter the additionally configured internal telephone number.
5. Tap on OK.
6. Select one of the following options:

   1 min: The line check (Bit Error Rate Test) is carried out in compliance with ITU-T o.150 and o.151 for one minute.

   15 min: The line check (Bit Error Rate Test) is carried out in compliance with ITU-T o.150 and o.151 for 15 minutes.
7. Tap on OK.

   The line check (BERT) is carried out.

   Afterwards, a message is displayed which shows if the line check was successful or if errors were found. The limit of error is 10^{-6}.

Determining the services on the PBX

The determination can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

1. Press the **menu key** and open the menu **diagnosis > ISDN > supp. serv. test**.
2. Tap on OK.

   The services test is started. All available services in the PBX are then marked by ☑.

Checking Quality of SD Card

The quality check can be carried out as follows:

- Using the telephone

Requirements:

– SD card inserted into slot

- Press the **Menu key** and open the menu **diagnosis > SD card > test card**.

The quality of the SD card is checked.

License Information

The software included in this product contains also copyrighted software that is licensed. A copy of these licenses is included in this section.

Licenses

Apache License

Version 2.0, January 2004 http://www.apache.org/licenses/

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR USE, REPRODUCTION, AND DISTRIBUTION

1. Definitions.

"License" shall mean the terms and conditions for use, reproduction, and distribution as defined by Sections 1 through 9 of this document.

"Licensor" shall mean the copyright owner or entity authorized by the copyright owner that is granting the License.

"Legal Entity" shall mean the union of the acting entity and all other entities that control, are controlled by, or are under common control with that entity. For the purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50%) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.

"You" (or "Your") shall mean an individual or Legal Entity exercising permissions granted by this License.

"Source" form shall mean the preferred form for making modifications, including but not limited to software source code, documentation source, and configuration files.

"Object" form shall mean any form resulting from mechanical transformation or translation of a Source form, including but not limited to compiled object code, generated documentation, and conversions to other media types.

"Work" shall mean the work of authorship, whether in Source or Object form, made available under the License, as indicated by a copyright notice that is included in or attached to the work (an example is provided in the Appendix below).

"Derivative Works" shall mean any work, whether in Source or Object form, that is based on (or derived from) the Work and for which the editorial revisions, annotations, elaborations, or other modifications represent, as a whole, an original work of authorship. For the purposes of this License, Derivative Works shall not include works that remain separable from, or merely link (or bind by name) to the interfaces of, the Work and Derivative Works thereof.

"Contribution" shall mean any work of authorship, including the original version of the Work and any modifications or additions to that Work or Derivative Works thereof, that is intentionally submitted to Licensor for inclusion in the Work by the copyright owner or by an individual or Legal Entity authorized to submit on behalf of the copyright owner. For the purposes of this definition, "submitted" means any form of electronic, verbal, or written communication sent to the Licensor or its representatives, including but not limited to communication on electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or

on behalf of, the Licensor for the purpose of discussing and improving the Work, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by the copyright owner as "Not a Contribution."

"Contributor" shall mean Licensor and any individual or Legal Entity on behalf of whom a Contribution has been received by Licensor and subsequently incorporated within the Work.

2. Grant of Copyright License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable copyright license to reproduce, prepare Derivative Works of, publicly display, publicly perform, sublicense, and distribute the Work and such Derivative Works in Source or Object form.

3. Grant of Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, import, and otherwise transfer the Work, where such license applies only to those patent claims licensable by such Contributor that are necessarily infringed by their Contribution(s) alone or by combination of their Contribution(s) with the Work to which such Contribution(s) was submitted. If You institute patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Work or a Contribution incorporated within the Work constitutes direct or contributory patent infringement, then any patent licenses granted to You under this License for that Work shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.

4. Redistribution. You may reproduce and distribute copies of the Work or Derivative Works thereof in any medium, with or without modifications, and in Source or Object form, provided that You meet the following conditions:

a. You must give any other recipients of the Work or Derivative Works a copy of this License; and

b. You must cause any modified files to carry prominent notices stating that You changed the files; and

c. You must retain, in the Source form of any Derivative Works that You distribute, all copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices from the Source form of the Work, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works; and

d. If the Work includes a "NOTICE" text file as part of its distribution, then any Derivative Works that You distribute must include a readable copy of the attribution notices contained within such NOTICE file, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works, in at least one of the following places: within a NOTICE text file distributed as part of the Derivative Works; within the Source form or documentation, if provided along with the Derivative Works; or, within a display generated by the Derivative Works, if and wherever such third-party notices normally appear. The contents of the NOTICE file are for informational purposes only and do not modify the License. You may add Your own attribution notices within Derivative Works that You distribute, alongside or as an addendum to the NOTICE text from the Work, provided that such additional attribution notices cannot be construed as modifying the License.

You may add Your own copyright statement to Your modifications and may provide additional or different license terms and conditions for use, reproduction, or distribution of Your modifications, or for any such Derivative Works as a whole, provided Your use, reproduction, and distribution of the Work otherwise complies with the conditions stated in this License.

5. Submission of Contributions. Unless You explicitly state otherwise, any Contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the Work by You to the Licensor shall be under the terms and conditions of this License, without any additional terms or conditions. Notwithstanding the above, nothing herein shall supersede or modify the terms of any separate license agreement you may have executed with Licensor regarding such Contributions.

6. Trademarks. This License does not grant permission to use the trade names, trademarks, service marks, or product names of the Licensor, except as required for reasonable and customary use in describing the origin of the Work and reproducing the content of the NOTICE file.

7. Disclaimer of Warranty. Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, Licensor provides the Work (and each Contributor provides its Contributions) on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied, including, without limitation, any warranties or conditions of TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. You are solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using or redistributing the Work and assume any risks associated with Your exercise of permissions under this License.

8. Limitation of Liability. In no event and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, unless required by applicable law (such as deliberate and grossly negligent acts) or agreed to in writing, shall any Contributor be liable to You for damages, including any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or out of the use or inability to use the Work (including but not limited to damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses), even if such Contributor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

9. Accepting Warranty or Additional Liability. While redistributing the Work or Derivative Works thereof, You may choose to offer, and charge a fee for, acceptance of support, warranty, indemnity, or other liability obligations and/or rights consistent with this License. However, in accepting such obligations, You may act only on Your own behalf and on Your sole responsibility, not on behalf of any other Contributor, and only if You agree to indemnify, defend, and hold each Contributor harmless for any liability incurred by, or claims asserted against, such Contributor by reason of your accepting any such warranty or additional liability.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Sourcery G++™ Software License Agreement

1. **Parties.** The parties to this Agreement are you, the licensee (“You” or “Licensee”) and CodeSourcery. If You are not acting on behalf of Yourself as an individual, then “You” means Your company or organization.

2. **The Software.** The Software licensed under this Agreement consists of computer programs and documentation referred to as Sourcery G++™ Lite Edition (the “Software”).
3. **Definitions.**

   3.1.**CodeSourcery Proprietary Components.** The components of the Software that are owned and/or licensed by CodeSourcery and are not subject to a “free software” or “open source” license, such as the GNU Public License. The CodeSourcery Proprietary Components of the Software include, without limitation, the Sourcery G++ Installer, any Sourcery G++ Eclipse plug-ins, and any Sourcery G++ Debug Sprite. For a complete list, refer to the Getting Started Guide included with the distribution.

   3.2.**Open Source Software Components.** The components of the Software that are subject to a “free software” or “open source” license, such as the GNU Public License.

   3.3.**Proprietary Rights.** All rights in and to copyrights, rights to register copyrights, trade secrets, inventions, patents, patent rights, trademarks, trademark rights, confidential and proprietary information protected under contract or otherwise under law, and other similar rights or interests in intellectual or industrial property.

   3.4.**Redistributable Components.** The CodeSourcery Proprietary Components that are intended to be incorporated or linked into Licensee object code developed with the Software. The Redistributable Components of the Software include, without limitation, the CSLIBC run-time library and the CodeSourcery Common Startup Code Sequence (CS3). For a complete list, refer to the Getting Started Guide included with the distribution.
4. **License Grant to Proprietary Components of the Software.** You are granted a non-exclusive, royalty-free license (a) to install and use the CodeSourcery Proprietary Components of the Software, (b) to transmit the CodeSourcery Proprietary Components over an internal computer network, (c) to copy the CodeSourcery Proprietary Components for Your internal use only, and (d) to distribute the Redistributable Component(s) in binary form only and only as part of Licensee object code developed with the Software that provides substantially different functionality than the Redistributable Component(s).
5. **Restrictions.** You may not: (i) copy or permit others to use the CodeSourcery Proprietary Components of the Software, except as expressly provided above; (ii) distribute the CodeSourcery Proprietary Components of the Software to any third party, except as expressly provided above; or (iii) reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble the CodeSourcery Proprietary Components of the Software, except to the extent this restriction is expressly prohibited by applicable law.
6. **“Free Software” or “Open Source” License to Certain Components of the Software.** This Agreement does not limit Your rights under, or grant You rights that supersede, the license terms of any Open Source Software Component delivered to You by CodeSourcery. Sourcery G++ includes components provided under various different licenses. The Getting Started Guide provides an overview of which license applies to different components. Definitive licensing information for each “free software” or “open source” component is available in the relevant source file.
7. **CodeSourcery Trademarks.** Notwithstanding any provision in a “free software” or “open source” license agreement applicable to a component of the Software that permits You to distribute such component to a third party in source or binary form, You may not use any

CodeSourcery trademark, whether registered or unregistered, including without limitation, CodeSourcery™, Sourcery G++™, the CodeSourcery crystal ball logo, or the Sourcery G++ splash screen, or any confusingly similar mark, in connection with such distribution, and You may not recompile the Open Source Software Components with the --with-pkgversion or --with-bugurl configuration options that embed CodeSourcery trademarks in the resulting binary.

8. **Term and Termination.** This Agreement shall remain in effect unless terminated pursuant to this provision. CodeSourcery may terminate this Agreement upon seven (7) days written notice of a material breach of this Agreement if such breach is not cured; provided that the unauthorized use, copying, or distribution of the CodeSourcery Proprietary Components of the Software will be deemed a material breach that cannot be cured.
9. **Transfers.** You may not transfer any rights under this Agreement without the prior written consent of CodeSourcery, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. A condition to any transfer or assignment shall be that the recipient agrees to the terms of this Agreement. Any attempted transfer or assignment in violation of this provision shall be null and void.
10. **Ownership.** CodeSourcery owns and/or has licensed the CodeSourcery Proprietary Components of the Software and all intellectual property rights embodied therein, including copyrights and valuable trade secrets embodied in its design and coding methodology. The CodeSourcery Proprietary Components of the Software are protected by United States copyright laws and international treaty provisions. CodeSourcery also owns all rights, title and interest in and with respect to its trade names, domain names, trade dress, logos, trademarks, service marks, and other similar rights or interests in intellectual property. This Agreement provides You only a limited use license, and no ownership of any intellectual property.
11. **Warranty Disclaimer; Limitation of Liability.** CODESOURCERY AND ITS LICENSORS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE “AS-IS” AND PROVIDED WITH ALL FAULTS. CODESOURCERY DOES NOT MAKE ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. CODESOURCERY SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SYSTEM INTEGRATION, AND DATA ACCURACY. THERE IS NO WARRANTY OR GUARANTEE THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED, ERROR-FREE, OR VIRUS-FREE, OR THAT THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET ANY PARTICULAR CRITERIA OF PERFORMANCE, QUALITY, ACCURACY, PURPOSE, OR NEED. YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE RISK OF SELECTION, INSTALLATION, AND USE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY CONSTITUTES AN ESSENTIAL PART OF THIS AGREEMENT. NO USE OF THE SOFTWARE IS AUTHORIZED HEREUNDER EXCEPT UNDER THIS DISCLAIMER.
12. **Local Law.** If implied warranties may not be disclaimed under applicable law, then ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE PERIOD REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW.

13. **Limitation of Liability.** INDEPENDENT OF THE FORGOING PROVISIONS, IN NO EVENT AND UNDER NO LEGAL THEORY, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, TORT, CONTRACT, OR STRICT PRODUCTS LIABILITY, SHALL CODESOURCERY BE LIABLE TO YOU OR ANY OTHER PERSON FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE, COMPUTER MALFUNCTION, OR ANY OTHER KIND OF COMMERCIAL DAMAGE, EVEN IF CODESOURCERY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. THIS LIMITATION SHALL NOT APPLY TO LIABILITY FOR DEATH OR PERSONAL INJURY TO THE EXTENT PROHIBITED BY APPLICABLE LAW. IN NO EVENT SHALL CODESOURCERY'S LIABILITY FOR ACTUAL DAMAGES FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, AND REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF ACTION, EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY YOU IN FEES UNDER THIS AGREEMENT DURING THE PREVIOUS ONE YEAR PERIOD.
14. **Export Controls.** You agree to comply with all export laws and restrictions and regulations of the United States or foreign agencies or authorities, and not to export or re-export the Software or any direct product thereof in violation of any such restrictions, laws or regulations, or without all necessary approvals. As applicable, each party shall obtain and bear all expenses relating to any necessary licenses and/or exemptions with respect to its own export of the Software from the U.S. Neither the Software nor the underlying information or technology may be electronically transmitted or otherwise exported or re-exported (i) into Cuba, Iran, Iraq, Libya, North Korea, Sudan, Syria or any other country subject to U.S. trade sanctions covering the Software, to individuals or entities controlled by such countries, or to nationals or residents of such countries other than nationals who are lawfully admitted permanent residents of countries not subject to such sanctions; or (ii) to anyone on the U.S. Treasury Department's list of Specially Designated Nationals and Blocked Persons or the U.S. Commerce Department's Table of Denial Orders. By downloading or using the Software, Licensee agrees to the foregoing and represents and warrants that it complies with these conditions.
15. **U.S. Government End-Users.** The Software is a “commercial item,” as that term is defined in 48 C.F.R. 2.101 (Oct. 1995), consisting of “commercial computer software” and “commercial computer software documentation,” as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. 12.212 (Sept. 1995). Consistent with 48 C.F.R. 12.212 and 48 C.F.R. 227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4 (June 1995), all U.S. Government End Users acquire the Software with only those rights set forth herein.
16. **Licensee Outside The U.S.** If You are located outside the U.S., then the following provisions shall apply: (i) Les parties aux presentes confirment leur volonte que cette convention de meme que tous les documents y compris tout avis qui siy rattache, soient rediges en langue anglaise (translation: “The parties confirm that this Agreement and all related documentation is and will be in the English language.”); and (ii) You are responsible for complying with any local laws in your jurisdiction which might impact your right to import, export or use the Software, and You represent that You have complied with any regulations or registration procedures required by applicable law to make this license enforceable.

17. **Severability.** If any provision of this Agreement is declared invalid or unenforceable, such provision shall be deemed modified to the extent necessary and possible to render it valid and enforceable. In any event, the unenforceability or invalidity of any provision shall not affect any other provision of this Agreement, and this Agreement shall continue in full force and effect, and be construed and enforced, as if such provision had not been included, or had been modified as above provided, as the case may be.
18. **Arbitration.** Except for actions to protect intellectual property rights and to enforce an arbitrator's decision hereunder, all disputes, controversies, or claims arising out of or relating to this Agreement or a breach thereof shall be submitted to and finally resolved by arbitration under the rules of the American Arbitration Association (“AAA”) then in effect. There shall be one arbitrator, and such arbitrator shall be chosen by mutual agreement of the parties in accordance with AAA rules. The arbitration shall take place in Granite Bay, California, and may be conducted by telephone or online. The arbitrator shall apply the laws of the State of California, USA to all issues in dispute. The controversy or claim shall be arbitrated on an individual basis, and shall not be consolidated in any arbitration with any claim or controversy of any other party. The findings of the arbitrator shall be final and binding on the parties, and may be entered in any court of competent jurisdiction for enforcement. Enforcements of any award or judgment shall be governed by the United Nations Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards. Should either party file an action contrary to this provision, the other party may recover attorney's fees and costs up to $1000.00.
19. **Jurisdiction And Venue.** The courts of Placer County in the State of California, USA and the nearest U.S. District Court shall be the exclusive jurisdiction and venue for all legal proceedings that are not arbitrated under this Agreement.
20. **Independent Contractors.** The relationship of the parties is that of independent contractor, and nothing herein shall be construed to create a partnership, joint venture, franchise, employment, or agency relationship between the parties. Licensee shall have no authority to enter into agreements of any kind on behalf of CodeSourcery and shall not have the power or authority to bind or obligate CodeSourcery in any manner to any third party.
21. **Force Majeure.** Neither CodeSourcery nor Licensee shall be liable for damages for any delay or failure of delivery arising out of causes beyond their reasonable control and without their fault or negligence, including, but not limited to, Acts of God, acts of civil or military authority, fires, riots, wars, embargoes, or communications failure.
22. **Miscellaneous.** This Agreement constitutes the entire understanding of the parties with respect to the subject matter of this Agreement and merges all prior communications, representations, and agreements. This Agreement may be modified only by a written agreement signed by the parties. If any provision of this Agreement is held to be unenforceable for any reason, such provision shall be reformed only to the extent necessary to make it enforceable. This Agreement shall be construed under the laws of the State of California, USA, excluding rules regarding conflicts of law. The application of the United Nations Convention of Contracts for the International Sale of Goods is expressly excluded. This license is written in English, and English is its controlling language.

NewLib

The newlib subdirectory is a collection of software from several sources.

Each file may have its own copyright/license that is embedded in the source file. Unless otherwise noted in the body of the source file(s), the following copyright notices will apply to the contents of the newlib subdirectory:

(1) Red Hat Incorporated

Copyright (c) 1994-2009 Red Hat, Inc. All rights reserved.

This copyrighted material is made available to anyone wishing to use, modify, copy, or redistribute it subject to the terms and conditions of the BSD License. This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY expressed or implied, including the implied warranties of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. A copy of this license is available at http://www.opensource.org/licenses. Any Red Hat trademarks that are incorporated in the source code or documentation are not subject to the BSD License and may only be used or replicated with the express permission of Red Hat, Inc.

(2) University of California, Berkeley

Copyright (c) 1981-2000 The Regents of the University of California.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(3) David M. Gay (AT&T 1991, Lucent 1998)

The author of this software is David M. Gay.

Copyright (c) 1991 by AT&T.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose without fee is hereby granted, provided that this entire notice is included in all copies of any software which is or includes a copy or modification of this software and in all copies of the supporting documentation for such software.

THIS SOFTWARE IS BEING PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY. IN PARTICULAR, NEITHER THE AUTHOR NOR AT&T MAKES ANY REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY OF ANY KIND CONCERNING THE MERCHANTABILITY OF THIS SOFTWARE OR ITS FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

The author of this software is David M. Gay.

Copyright (C) 1998-2001 by Lucent Technologies All Rights Reserved

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that the copyright notice and this permission notice and warranty disclaimer appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of Lucent or any of its entities not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission.

LUCENT DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE,INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS.IN NO EVENT SHALL LUCENT OR ANY OF ITS ENTITIES BE LIABLE FOR ANYSPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGESWHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHERIN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION,ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OFTHIS SOFTWARE.

(4) Advanced Micro Devices

Copyright 1989, 1990 Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.

This software is the property of Advanced Micro Devices, Inc (AMD) which specifically grants the user the right to modify, use and distribute this software provided this notice is not removed or altered. All other rights are reserved by AMD.

AMD MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH REGARD TO THISSOFTWARE. IN NO EVENT SHALL AMD BE LIABLE FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIALDAMAGES IN CONNECTION WITH OR ARISING FROM THE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE, ORUSE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

So that all may benefit from your experience, please report any problems or suggestions about this software to the 29K Technical Support Center at 800-29-29-AMD (800-292-9263) in the USA, or 0800-89-1131 in the UK, or 0031-11-1129 in Japan, toll free. The direct dial number is 512-462-4118.

Advanced Micro Devices, Inc. 29K Support Products Mail Stop 5735900 E. Ben White Blvd.Austin, TX 78741800-292-9263

(5) C.W. Sandmann

Copyright (C) 1993 C.W. Sandmann

This file may be freely distributed as long as the author's name remains.

(6) Eric Backus

(C) Copyright 1992 Eric Backus

This software may be used freely so long as this copyright notice is left intact. There is no warrantee on this software.

(7) Sun Microsystems

Copyright (C) 1993 by Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.

Developed at Sun Pro, a Sun Microsystems, Inc. business.Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software is freely granted, provided that this notice is preserved.

(8) Hewlett Packard

(c) Copyright 1986 HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY

To anyone who acknowledges that this file is provided "AS IS"without any express or implied warranty:

permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this file for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice and this notice appears in all copies, and that the name of Hewlett-Packard Company not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission.Hewlett-Packard Company makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose.

(9) Hans-Peter Nilsson

Copyright (C) 2001 Hans-Peter Nilsson

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software is freely granted, provided that the above copyright notice, this notice and the following disclaimer are preserved with no changes.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ``AS IS'' AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS ORIMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIEDWARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULARPURPOSE.

(10) Stephane Carrez (m68hc11-elf/m68hc12-elf targets only)

Copyright (C) 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002 Stephane Carrez (stcarrez@nerim.fr)

The authors hereby grant permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and license this software and its documentation for any purpose, provided that existing copyright notices are retained in all copies and that this notice is included verbatim in any distributions. No written agreement, license, or royalty fee is required for any of the authorized uses.Modifications to this software may be copyrighted by their authors and need not follow the licensing terms described here, provided that the new terms are clearly indicated on the first page of each file where they apply.

(11) Christopher G. Demetriou

Copyright (c) 2001 Christopher G. Demetriou All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS ORIMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIESOF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED.IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT,INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUTNOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE,DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANYTHEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT(INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OFTHIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(12) SuperH, Inc.

Copyright 2002 SuperH, Inc. All rights reserved

This software is the property of SuperH, Inc (SuperH) which specifically grants the user the right to modify, use and distribute this software provided this notice is not removed or altered. All other rights are reserved by SuperH.

SUPERH MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH REGARD TOTHIS SOFTWARE. IN NO EVENT SHALL SUPERH BE LIABLE FOR INDIRECT, SPECIAL,INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IN CONNECTION WITH OR ARISING FROMTHE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE, OR USE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

So that all may benefit from your experience, please report any problems or suggestions about this software to the SuperH Support Center via e-mail at softwaresupport@superh.com.

SuperH, Inc.

405 River Oaks Parkway

San Jose

CA 95134

USA

(13) Royal Institute of Technology

Copyright (c) 1999 Kungliga Tekniska HÃ¶gskolan

(Royal Institute of Technology, Stockholm, Sweden).

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of KTH nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY KTH AND ITS CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL KTH OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN

CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(14) Alexey Zelkin

Copyright (c) 2000, 2001 Alexey Zelkin <phantom@FreeBSD.org>

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' ANDANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THEIMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSEARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLEFOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIALDAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODSOR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION)HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICTLIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAYOUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OFSUCH DAMAGE.

(15) Andrey A. Chernov

Copyright (C) 1997 by Andrey A. Chernov, Moscow, Russia.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(16) FreeBSD

Copyright (c) 1997-2002 FreeBSD Project.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(17) S. L. Moshier

Author: S. L. Moshier.

Copyright (c) 1984,2000 S.L. Moshier

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose without fee is hereby granted, provided that this entire notice is included in all copies of any software which is or includes a copy or modification of this software and in all copies of the supporting documentation for such software.

THIS SOFTWARE IS BEING PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY. IN PARTICULAR, THE AUTHOR MAKES NO REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY OF ANY KIND CONCERNING THE MERCHANTABILITY OF THIS SOFTWARE OR ITS FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

(18) Citrus Project

Copyright (c)1999 Citrus Project,

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(19) Todd C. Miller

Copyright (c) 1998 Todd C. Miller <Todd.Miller@courtesan.com>

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(20) DJ Delorie (i386)

Copyright (C) 1991 DJ Delorie

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms is permitted provided that the above copyright notice and following paragraph are duplicated in all such forms.

This file is distributed WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

(21) Free Software Foundation LGPL License (*-linux* targets only)

Copyright (C) 1990-1999, 2000, 2001 Free Software Foundation, Inc.

This file is part of the GNU C Library.

Contributed by Mark Kettenis <kettenis@phys.uva.nl>, 1997.

The GNU C Library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

The GNU C Library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Lesser General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public License along with the GNU C Library; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA.

(22) Xavier Leroy LGPL License (i[3456]86-*-linux* targets only)

Copyright (C) 1996 Xavier Leroy (Xavier.Leroy@inria.fr)

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Library General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Library General Public License for more details.

(23) Intel (i960)

Copyright (c) 1993 Intel Corporation

Intel hereby grants you permission to copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation. Intel grants this permission provided that the above copyright notice appears in all copies and that both the copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation. In addition, Intel grants this permission provided that you prominently mark as "not part of the original" any modifications made to this software or documentation, and that the name of Intel Corporation not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software or the documentation without specific, written prior permission.

Intel Corporation provides this AS IS, WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS ORIMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITYOR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Intel makes no guarantee or representations regarding the use of, or the results of the use of, the software and documentation in terms of correctness, accuracy, reliability, currentness, or otherwise; and you rely on the software, documentation and results solely at your own risk.

IN NO EVENT SHALL INTEL BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOSS OF USE, LOSS OF BUSINESS,LOSS OF PROFITS, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGESOF ANY KIND. IN NO EVENT SHALL INTEL'S TOTAL LIABILITY EXCEED THE SUMPAID TO INTEL FOR THE PRODUCT LICENSED HEREUNDER.

(24) Hewlett-Packard (hppa targets only)

(c) Copyright 1986 HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY

To anyone who acknowledges that this file is provided "AS IS"without any express or implied warranty:

permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this file for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice and this notice appears in all copies, and that the name of Hewlett-Packard Company not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission.Hewlett-Packard Company makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose.

(25) Henry Spencer (only *-linux targets)

Copyright 1992, 1993, 1994 Henry Spencer. All rights reserved.

This software is not subject to any license of the American Telephone and Telegraph Company or of the Regents of the University of California.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose on any computer system, and to alter it and redistribute it, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The author is not responsible for the consequences of use of this software, no matter how awful, even if they arise from flaws in it.

2. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented, either by explicit claim or by omission. Since few users ever read sources, credits must appear in the documentation.

3. Altered versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software. Since few users ever read sources, credits must appear in the documentation.

4. This notice may not be removed or altered.

(26) Mike Barcroft

Copyright (c) 2001 Mike Barcroft <mike@FreeBSD.org>

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(27) Konstantin Chuguev (--enable-newlib-iconv)

Copyright (c) 1999, 2000

Konstantin Chuguev. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' ANDANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THEIMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSEARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLEFOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIALDAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODSOR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION)HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICTLIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAYOUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

iconv (Charset Conversion Library) v2.0

(28) Artem Bityuckiy (--enable-newlib-iconv)

Copyright (c) 2003, Artem B. Bityuckiy, SoftMine Corporation.

Rights transferred to Franklin Electronic Publishers.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS

INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(29) IBM, Sony, Toshiba (only spu-* targets)

(C) Copyright 2001,2006,

International Business Machines Corporation, Sony Computer Entertainment, Incorporated, Toshiba Corporation,

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the names of the copyright holders nor the names of their contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(30) - Alex Tatmanjants (targets using libc/posix)

Copyright (c) 1995 Alex Tatmanjants <alex@elvisti.kiev.ua>

at Electronni Visti IA, Kiev, Ukraine.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(31) - M. Warner Losh (targets using libc/posix)

Copyright (c) 1998, M. Warner Losh <imp@freebsd.org>

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(32) - Andrey A. Chernov (targets using libc/posix)

Copyright (C) 1996 by Andrey A. Chernov, Moscow, Russia.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(33) - Daniel Eischen (targets using libc/posix)

Copyright (c) 2001 Daniel Eischen <deischen@FreeBSD.org>.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS

INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(34) - Jon Beniston (only lm32-* targets)

Contributed by Jon Beniston <jon@beniston.com>

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(35) - ARM Ltd (arm and thumb variant targets only)

Copyright (c) 2009 ARM Ltd

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. 3. The name of the company may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ARM LTD ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL ARM LTD BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(36) - Xilinx, Inc. (microblaze-* and powerpc-* targets)

Copyright (c) 2004, 2009 Xilinx, Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of Xilinx nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(37) Texas Instruments Incorporated (tic6x-* targets)

Copyright (c) 1996-2010 Texas Instruments Incorporated

http://www.ti.com/

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of Texas Instruments Incorporated nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

(38) National Semiconductor (cr16-* and crx-* targets)

Copyright (c) 2004 National Semiconductor Corporation

The authors hereby grant permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and license this software and its documentation for any purpose, provided that existing copyright notices are retained in all copies and that this notice is included verbatim in any distributions. No written agreement, license, or royalty fee is required for any of the authorized uses.Modifications to this software may be copyrighted by their authors and need not follow the licensing terms described here, provided that the new terms are clearly indicated on the first page of each file where they apply.

Index

A

active communication partner, changing (splitting) 92

announcement 420
- call information on/off 423
- changing manually with key 352
- creating 420
- deleting 422
- editing 421
- separator tone on/off 423

announcement (InterCom) 217
- function key 218

announcements
- recording (answering machine) 349

answering machine
- accepting group calls 364
- announcements, recording 349
- answering machine list 337
- basic setting 359
- call acceptance readiness 333
- call acceptance time 359
- call acceptance/announcement assignment 355
- call recording 366
- call recording, automatic 368
- call recording, info tone 372
- call recordings, listening to (answering machine list) 339
- call type 355
- data exchange 391
- forwarding a call 331
- listen in function 362
- memo, listening to 347
- memo, recording 343
- message forwarding 382
- message forwarding announcement 385
- message forwarding, repetition 389
- message forwarding, target 386
- message forwarding, waiting period 388
- messages, listening to (answering machine list) 339
- playback, automatic 363
- quick remote access number 378
- readiness 333
- recording time 360
- recording time, door terminal call 361

remote access 374
remote access toll saver 377
remote access, configure 375
remote access, executing 379
symbol 54

answering machine list 337
display navigation 338
function key 341
opening 337, 345
recordings, listening to 339
telephone number, dial 340

answering machine menu 46, 47

attention tone
automatic call acceptance 161
power dialling 249
waiting field 322

automatic call acceptance 159
attention tone 161
call acceptance time 162
function key 159
on/off 159

B

backlight 448

backup 488
PC 488
SD card 491

BERT 499

boss key 168

boss/secretary function 164
off (function key) 171

brightness 449

busy signal
callback, initiating 83
ending call for query call 91
priority call (do-not-disturb) 86

C

calibration 453

call 87
- accepting 74
- call waiting, accepting 78
- call waiting, forwarding 78
- call waiting, ignoring 79
- call waiting, rejecting 78
- display navigation 39
- DTMF signal, sending 88
- ending 88
- forwarding 75
- hands-free calling 101
- hands-free calling off 102
- hands-free calling, switch on 101
- headset 104
- incoming call, on hold 75
- initiating from calls list 133
- interrupt for pickup 244
- loudspeaker listening 103
- loudspeaker listening off 103
- loudspeaker listening on 103
- mute 88
- outgoing 80
- rejecting 74
- subscriber, changing 92
- symbol 49
- third communication partner, transferring 96
- to boss telephone 164
- transfer 94
- transfer from query call 96
- transfer without announcement 95

call acceptance readiness 333

call acceptance time 359

call charges 471

call charges, configuring
- cost per call unit 471
- currency 471

call deblocker
- function key 176
- on/off 176, 279

call deblocker (incoming) 176
call deflection (call forwarding) 75
call forwarding 258
external numbers 268
kind 259
subscriber 260
variants 179
variation 258
call forwarding (ext. no.)
function key 269
switch on/off 268
call forwarding (subscriber)
function key 261
on/off 260
call macro, configuring 120
call recording 366
automatic 368
automatic, function key 370
function key 367
info tone 372
listening to (answering machine list) 339
call restrictor
function key 279
call restrictor (incoming) 279
call signal, light
function key 463
call signalling, configuring 459
call waiting 150
call waiting call 77
call waiting tone off 79
call waiting, accepting 78
call waiting, forwarding 78
call waiting, rejecting 78
call, ignoring 79
door knocks 306
function key 150
on/off 150
signalling 152
call, ending
during a query call 92

during conference call 100
call, incoming 73
call, initiating 80
answering machine list 340
caller list 140
dial preparation 81
direct exchange line access 81, 82
hands-free calling mode 101
number presentation suppression 81
redial list 129
targeted exchange line access 180, 181
targeted VoIP access point 188
telephone book 110
voice mailbox list 401
callback
initiating on busy 83
initiating on no response 85
caller list 138
call type, selecting 143
display navigation 138
entry, deleting 140
function key 141
opening 138
signalling LED, selecting 144
telephone number, dialling 140
calls list 132
call type, selecting 136
display navigation 132
entry, deleting 134
function key 134
opening 132
telephone number, dialling 133
casing
casing LED, configuring 457
LED 31
CCBS (callback on busy) 83
CCNR (callback on no response) 85
CE symbol ..... *see leaflet "Conditions of Guarantee, Information Service"*
charges
deleting 497

COMfortel Set
entry field ... 65
exiting ... 59
installation ... 60
interface, configuring ... 59
language, configuring ... 59
list entry, creating ... 66
list entry, deleting ... 66
navigation ... 65
operating instructions ... 65
print function ... 63
selection field ... 65
starting ... 58

comments ... 119

conference
connecting both conference call partners ... 100
options ... 98

conference call ... 98
conference call partner, ending a call ... 99
end completely ... 100
initiating ... 98

configuration
closing ... 63
creating ... 62
opening ... 60
saving on PC ... 63
saving on telephone ... 62

configuration file, open ... 61

configuration software ... 58
entry field ... 65
exiting ... 59
installation ... 60
interface, configuring ... 59
language, configuring ... 59
list entry, creating ... 66
list entry, deleting ... 66
minimum requirements, PC ... 58
navigation ... 65
output field ... 65
print function ... 63
starting ... 58

configuration switchover ... 228

function key 228
manual 228
configuration-dependent control
function key 410
voice mailbox 410
copyright 26
cost per call unit 471
currency 471

D

data backup 488
PC 488
SD card 491

data exchange 391

data, deleting 497

date format 452

declaration of conformity ..... *see leaflet "Conditions of Guarantee, Information Service"*

deleting
charges 497
personal data 498

device 29

diagnosis menu 47

diagnostic function 499

dial preparation 81
number into telephone book 121
symbol 48

dialling
answering machine list 340
call (query call), out of 90
caller list 140
calls list 133
direct exchange line access 82
DTMF code in call 88
redialling 129
telephone book 110
telephone number 81

display
answering machine list 338
caller list 138
calls list 132
during a call 39
during a query call 40
idle state 33
incoming call 36
inverse display view 450
key definition 35
main menu 34
outgoing call 38

redialling ... 128
telephone book ... 108
telephone number entry ... 36
text entry ... 36
voice mailbox list ... 399

display backlight ... 448
brightness, configuring ... 449
use as ring signal ... 462

display setting
date format ... 452
language ... 448
time format ... 451
touchscreen ... 453
wallpaper ... 453

display view, inverse ... 450

disposal ... 27

do-not-disturb ... 154
function key ... 154
ignoring (priority call) ... 86
on/off ... 154
type ... 156

door
door call, accepting ... 306
door knocks ... 306
opening ... 306

door function ... 305
function key ... 307

E

energy consumption 27

entry field
COMfortel Set 65

environmental notice 27

exchange line access, targeted
initiating 180, 181

exchange line transfer 147
function key 147
sequence 147

exporting
telephone book 127

external waiting field
function key 315

F

factory setting 497

factory setting, resetting 494, 497

factory settings 494

firmware
- distributing 486
- saving on PC 486

firmware update 483
- manual 483
- variants 483

firmware update, instant 485

follow me 173
- function key 174

follow-me
- on/off 173

function key
- announcement, editing 352
- answering machine list 341
- automatic call acceptance 159
- boss key 168
- boss/secretary function off 171
- call deblocker 176
- call forwarding (ext. no.) 269
- call forwarding (subscriber) 261
- call recording 367
- call recording, automatic 370
- call restrictor 279
- call signal, light 463
- call waiting 150
- caller list 141
- calls list 134
- configuration switchover 228
- configuration-dependent control 410
- do-not-disturb 154
- door function 307
- exchange line transfer 147
- exchanging/moving 481
- follow me 174
- group function 194
- group status 200
- headset 474

hotel reception telephone 213
hotel room telephone 215
InterCom announcement 218
InterCom handsfree 222
InterCom permission 224
logging out of all groups 198
loudspeaker audio out 233
macro 237
message forwarding 383, 431
message, moving 416
MSN/DDI call forwarding 269
phone lock 288
pickup 245
power save mode 284
printing key assignment 63
readiness 334
readiness voice mailbox 406
relay 254
remote access 427
ring signal 460
room monitoring 252
scheduled call 296
secretary key 165
shift 479
speed dialling 325
subscriber call forwarding 261
substitute function 436
targeted exchange line access 182, 184, 186
targeted VoIP access point 189
text before answering 299, 302
voice mailbox, opening 402
voice memo 343, 414
waiting field (external) 315
waiting field (internal) 318
waiting field reception 320

function keys
second level, enabling 478

function lock, configuring 444

function menu 42

G

group function 192
detailed information 192
function key 194
logging out of all groups 194
group functions
logging in/out 193
group status
function key 200
guarantee ..... *see leaflet "Conditions of Guarantee, Information Service"*

H

handsfree (InterCom) 217
function key 222

hands-free calling 101

headset
call, making 104
function key 474
on/off 473
ringing 475
technical data 22
volume 477

help 67
navigation 67
opening 67
printing 70
searching 69
symbol 71

hotel function 203
configuring 204
function area 203

hotel reception telephone
call charges, querying 207
check-in 206
check-out 210
external telephoning, blocking 209
function key 213
interim invoice, printing 208
room status, checking/changing 205

hotel room telephone
call charges, querying 212
function key 215
wake-up time, configuring 211

I

identification
telephone ... 441

idle state
menu option ... 33
symbol ... 48

important information ... 16

importing
Outlook contact ... 125
telephone book ... 124

incoming call
display navigation ... 36

incoming call, on hold ... 75

information ... 16

information menu ... 41

installation
COMfortel Set ... 60

InterCom
announcement ... 217

InterCom announcement
executing ... 217
function key ... 218
procedure ... 217

InterCom handsfree ... 217
executing ... 221
function key ... 222
procedure ... 221

InterCom permission ... 224
function key ... 224

interface
COMfortel Set ... 59

internal waiting field
function key ... 318

K

key 29
LED 29
key definition
symbol 51
key definition menu 43

L

language, configuring 448

LED
- casing 31
- casing LED, configuring 457
- key 29

LED message key 144

line check (BERT) 499

list entry
- creating (COMfortel Set) 66
- deleting (COMfortel Set) 66

listen in function 362

logging into a group 193

logging out of a group 193

logging out of all groups
- function key 198

loudspeaker audio out 232
- executing 232
- function key 233

loudspeaker listening 103

M

macro 236
display presentation 240
execution procedure 236
function key 237

main menu
menu option 34

maintenance 482

manager telephone
secretary key 165

manual firmware update 483

memo 242
creating 242
retrieving 242

memos (list)
recording, listening to 347

menu navigation
symbol 50

menu option 33
during a call 39
during a query call 40
idle state 33
incoming call 36
key definition 35
main menu 34
outgoing call 38
symbol 48
telephone number entry 36
text entry 36

menu overview 41
answering machine menu 46, 47
diagnosis menu 47
function menu 42
information menu 41
key definition menu 43
settings menu 45

menu selection, restricting 478

message forwarding 382, 431
announcement 385

function key 383, 431
on/off 431
repetition 389
target 386
waiting period 388

messages, listening to (answering machine list) 339

microphone
off 88

minimum requirements, PC 58

MSN
configuring 441

MSN/DDI call forwarding
function key 269
on/off 268

mute 88

N

navigation
COMfortel Set 65

no response
callback, initiating 85

O

operating instructions
COMfortel Set 65

outgoing call
display navigation 38

Outlook contact, importing (telephone book) 125

output field
COMfortel Set 65

P

PBX
selecting ... 495
service test ... 500
synchronisation ... 496

PC
data backup ... 488
minimum requirements ... 58

personal data
deleting ... 498

phone lock ... 288
disabling ... 288
enabling ... 288
function key ... 288

pickup ... 244
during a call ... 244
executing ... 244
function key ... 245

PIN
configuring ... 443

playback, automatic ... 363

power dialling ... 248
attention tone ... 249
cancelling ... 249
executing ... 248
procedure ... 248

power save mode ... 282
activation depending on configuration ... 283
automatic activation ... 282
function key ... 284
link to phone lock ... 286

print function ... 63

priority call
initiating ... 86

project assignment
list, printing ... 63

proper use ... 20

Q

query call 90
both communication partners, connect 93
call, ending 92
initiating 90
number calls is busy/no response 91
query call, ending 91
quick remote access number 378

R

readiness 333
function key 334
readiness voice mailbox 406
function key 406
on/off 406
receiver volume 473
reception telephone
wake-up time, configuring 207
recording time 360
door terminal call 361
recording, listening to
voice mailbox 400
redial list 128
call type, selecting 131
display navigation 128
entry, deleting 130
opening 128
selecting 129
registration status 329
rejecting
call waiting 78
caller 74
relay 254
on/off 254
relays
function key 254
remote access 374
configuring 375
executing 379
function key 427
on/off 426
variants 374
voice mailbox 425
remote access toll saver 377
resetting
factory setting 497
resetting factory setting 494

restriction
function lock ... 444
settings lock ... 445
symbol ... 53
restrictions ... 443
ring signal
function key ... 460
ringer
flashing display backlight ... 462
on/off ... 459
tones, configuring ... 468
volume, configuring ... 468
volume, increasing automatically ... 469
Robinson number ... 279
room monitoring ... 251
ending ... 251
function key ... 252
initiating ... 251

S

safety information 18

scheduled call 291
- accept as schedule reminder 294
- call reminder, accepting 294
- call reminder, configuring 292
- function key 296
- list, opening 291
- schedule reminder, configuring 292
- symbol 53

scheduled call list
- scheduled call, deleting 295
- scheduled call, editing 295

scope of delivery 24

SD card
- data backup 491
- testing 500

secretary function 164

secretary key 165

secretary telephone
- boss key 168

selection
- symbol 50
- voice mailbox list 401

service 482

service ..... *see leaflet "Conditions of Guarantee, Information Service"*

service test 500

settings lock, configuring 445

settings menu 45

shift 479

signal word 17

speed dialling 324
- automatic pick-up 328
- function key 325
- registration status 329

speed dialling key
- application options 324

splitting 92
active call, ending 92
active communication partner, transferring 96
communication partners, connecting both 93
from query call 92
initiating from conference call 99
to third subscriber, transfer 96

subscriber call forwarding
function key 261
on/off 260

subscriber, changing (splitting) 92

substitute function
on/off 435

suppress
telephone number display 81

symbol 17, 48
answering machine 54
confirmation 51
dial preparation 48
idle state 48
key definition 51
menu navigation 50
restriction 53
scheduled call 53
selection 50
telephone book 52
telephone number entry 50
telephone number list 53
text entry 50
voice mailbox 55

symbols
calls 49

synchronisation (PBX) 496

T

targeted exchange line access 179
function key 182, 184, 186

targeted VoIP access point 188
function key 189
initiating 188

technical data 22

telephone
identification 441

telephone book 106, 107
call macro, configuring 120
comment 119
contact, deleting 118
contact, editing 113
exporting 127
importing 124
new contact, configuring 110
opening 107
Outlook contact, importing 125
printing 63
symbol 52
telephone number from dial preparation 121
telephone number, dialling 110
telephone number, displayed range, configuring 123

telephone number display
suppressing 81

telephone number entry
symbol 50

telephone number list 106
symbol 53

telephone ringer, on/off 459

telephoning
call waiting call 77
call, accept 74
call, incoming 73
call, outgoing 80
caller, rejecting 74
conference call, initiating 98
during a conference call 98
during a query call 91

text before answering
function key ... 299, 302
variants ... 298
text before answering for group
on/off ... 302
text before answering for group on/off ... 299
text before answering for groups ... 298
text entry
symbol ... 50
time format ... 451
touchscreen ... 31
calibration ... 453
trademark ... 26
transfer ... 94
options ... 94
query call, from ... 96
third communication partner ... 96
waiting loop, placing in ... 96
with announcement ... 95
without announcement ... 95
transfer without announcement ... 95
transmission
telephone number, suppressing ... 81
type of do-not-disturb ... 156

U

user PIN, configuring 443

V

VIP number 176

voice mailbox 398
- announcement 420
- announcement, creating 420
- announcement, deleting 422
- announcement, editing 421
- configuration-dependent control 410
- function key remote access 427
- message forwarding 431
- message forwarding on/off 431
- message, moving 416
- opening 398
- readiness 406
- readiness on/off 406
- recording, listening to 400
- remote access 425
- remote access on/off 426
- remote access, executing 425
- substitute function 435
- substitute function on/off 435
- symbol 55
- voice memo 414

voice mailbox list
- display navigation 399

voice mailbox, opening
- function key 402

voice memo 414
- function key 343, 414

voice memo (list) 343
- opening 345

voice memo, recording 343

volume
- headset 477
- receiver 473

volume, changing
- automatically 469

W

waiting field
attention tone 322
configuring 311
function key, external 315
function key, internal 318
waiting field function 311
sequence for call acceptance 312
waiting field reception
function key 320
on/off 314
waiting loop 96
wallpaper 453

V01 04/2014